

UNITED STATES FOOD AND DRUG ADMINISTRATION

FDA PUBLIC WORKSHOP: BIOMARKER-DRIVEN DRUG
DEVELOPMENT FOR ALLERGIC DISEASES AND ASTHMA

Silver Spring, Maryland

Thursday, February 22, 2024

[This transcript has not been edited or corrected,
but appears as received from the commercial
transcribing service. Accordingly, the Food and
Drug Administration makes no representation as to
its accuracy.]

1 PARTICIPANTS:

2 DAVID KASLOW, MD

3 PETER MARKS, MD, PHD

4 JEFF SIEGEL, MD

5 STEFAN VIETHS, PHD

6 PETER STEIN, MD

7 RICHARD BEGER, PHD

8 LYNNE YAO, MD

9 ALKIS TOGIAS, MD

10 GURJIT KHURANA HERSHEY, MD, PHD

11 SYED H. ARSHAD MBBS, DM, FRCP

12 SALLY WENZEL, MD

13 ROBERT HAMILTON, PHD

14 MATTHEW ALTMAN, MD, MPHIL

15 MOHAMED H. SHAMJI, PHD

16 PAMELA GUERRERIO, MD, PHD

17 OLENA GOLEVA, PHD

18 ALEXANDRA SANTOS, MD, MSC

19 HUGH SAMPSON, MD

20 ERIK WAMBRE, PHD, MSC

21 WAYNE SHREFFLER, MD, PHD

22 * * * * *

1 P R O C E E D I N G S

2 (8:10 a.m.)

3 DR. MARKS: Good morning everyone, in
4 the room here, and online, I'm Peter Marks,
5 director of Center for Biologics Evaluation and
6 Research. I want to welcome you to today's public
7 workshop on biomarker driven drug development for
8 allergic diseases and asthma. Thank you for
9 attending.

10 For those of you in the room and online,
11 you should know that the meeting is being
12 transcribed, thanks to our transcriber in the
13 corner there and really want to welcome you.
14 Thank you for taking the time to get through
15 security, those in the room, for those outside of
16 the room, you can enjoy that, you didn't have to
17 go through security, but thanks very much, so.

18 Just to give you some opening, remarks
19 here, and kick this off. I just want to, just put
20 allergenic products in perspective at FDA. As
21 people may be aware, FDA is divided into multiple
22 different centers, and allergenic products are

1 actually handled by different centers, or parts of
2 the allergenic world.

3 The Center for Drug Evaluation and
4 Research handles small molecules and recombinant
5 proteins, as well as Monoclonal antibodies, so
6 those products would be, handled in their domain.
7 The Center for Devices and Radiologic Health
8 handles most in vitro diagnostics. We have a
9 small number in our center, but they're mainly
10 around blood transfusion, and then.

11 Our center, Center for Biologics
12 Evaluation and Research has handled allergen
13 extracts for diagnosis, or immunotherapy, and
14 other in vivo diagnostics, such as patch tests for
15 contact dermatitis. That's been in our domain
16 because we tend to at our center. The nice way of
17 saying it is that, we handle the complex
18 biologics. Another way of saying it is, we handle
19 the messy biologics, like the one you vacuum up
20 out of carpets, but that's just the way it goes.

21 Our center actually has a long history
22 that dates back before the actual Food and Drug

1 Administration was established. The Biologics
2 Control Act of 1902, came into being because of
3 two episodes of contaminated biologic products in
4 the United States in 1901 that killed 22 children,
5 so this was put into place in 1902, and. By 1903,
6 the Hygienic Laboratory of the Public Health and
7 Marine Hospital Service had the authority to
8 issue, suspend, and revoke licenses to produce and
9 sell biologic products.

10 Over time, this authority moved from
11 different agencies, and this became the division
12 of Biologic standards within NIH when it was the
13 National Institute for Health, ultimately becoming
14 part of, the National Institutes of Health, with
15 research and review responsibilities. Up through
16 1972, when there was a little bit of a flu
17 scandal, which you can read about on your own
18 time, and. The administration transferred
19 biologics over to the Food and Drug
20 Administration, so then, the precursor to Center
21 for Biologics Evaluation Research came into being
22 here.

1 We maintained the researcher reviewer
2 model that was in place at NIH. We now have state
3 of the art laboratories with high quality core
4 facilities. We had nice laboratories at NIH, they
5 weren't, they were nice when they were new, when
6 they were in the 1960s, but by the time we left
7 them in 2014, they needed a little freshening,
8 which they've now received, but. Our new
9 laboratories, which are just to the south of us
10 here, are really state of the art laboratories
11 with high quality core facilities, imaging, we
12 have a Vivarium that is reasonably large flow,
13 Cytometry genomics, and Proteomic cores.

14 The Office of Vaccines Research and
15 Review is the place where our allergenic products
16 are, housed. Obviously, vaccines research and
17 review is not a perfect name for it, because it's
18 other products as well. Obviously, it handles all
19 of the viral, bacterial, and parasitic vaccines,
20 but also allergenic products, fecal Microbiota,
21 transplantation, other live bio-therapeutic
22 products, and Bacteriophage.

1 We have 31 principal investigators, who
2 have independent, internally funded basic research
3 programs, some have other funding from around the
4 agency, and this research endeavor has actually
5 contributed significantly to public health.

6 Between various publications and various
7 technologies, including patents, have made a
8 difference in global public health, one example
9 being the conjugation technology that was licensed
10 to WHO for the meningococcal vaccine, that has led
11 to a less expensive meningococcal vaccine for the
12 continent of Africa, so.

13 Back to allergic diseases. There has
14 been an intense interest in biomarkers and
15 allergic diseases, and you can see here, although
16 there's been a little dip, the kind of steady rise
17 here in the number of publications in this area,
18 and. Today's workshop comes at a really,
19 excellent time, I think, to have a further
20 discussion of biomarkers in this area of allergic
21 diseases and asthma. This is just as of
22 February15th.

1 To give you an idea of who is here: 659
2 registrants as of February 15, 522 of you are
3 virtual, 185 are in person. And 48 are double
4 booked, they probably will be a little bit like
5 me, I will spend part of the day in the room, and
6 part of the day down South of here, in my office,
7 taking care of some other things and listening in.

8 If you look here, we have about 61
9 percent industry participants, 12 percent
10 academia, 8 percent including advocacy
11 organizations and non-U.S. government agencies,
12 and 19 percent government agencies, again based on
13 the date when this was done.

14 We have a variety of countries
15 represented, so very grateful to have you, you can
16 see, I won't read through them all, but a list of
17 European and Asian, including Australia and New
18 Zealand, so thank you very much for joining.

19 I'll just conclude my remarks by saying,
20 putting together one of these workshops is a huge
21 undertaking, and I'm very, very grateful to all
22 those who have really made this happen, there's a

1 lot that goes into it. You can see on this
2 between Ron Rabin and Jay Slater, and others in
3 the Office of Vaccine Research and Review, and
4 those in the Cedar Office of New Drugs, Stacey
5 Chen and others, as well as, Sherry and Lonnie in
6 our Office of Communications, Outreach and
7 Development. Thank you all to them for all their
8 efforts making today happen.

9 I also want to just thank you all for
10 attending today I really wish everyone a wonderful
11 day of lectures and discussion. Thanks very much.

12 DR. SIEGEL: Good morning everyone, I'm
13 delighted to be here. My name is Jeffrey Siegel.
14 I'm office director for the Office of Drug
15 Evaluation Sciences and the center for Drugs at
16 FDA.

17 I'm going to be speaking to you about
18 the way we approach incorporation of biomarkers
19 into drug development programs. I'll begin by
20 talking about the different types of biomarkers
21 and how they can play different roles in drug
22 development. Then talk about the process, for

1 accepting biomarkers in drug development programs,
2 and then talk about some considerations for
3 surrogate endpoints in particular.

4 Let's start with a definition of what a
5 biomarker is. Biomarker is a defined
6 characteristic that's measured as an indicator of
7 normal biologic processes, pathogenic processes,
8 or responses to an exposure or intervention,
9 including therapeutic interventions. Molecular,
10 histologic, radiographic, or physiologic
11 characteristics are different types of biomarkers.

12 The FDA worked with colleagues at the
13 NIH to develop a glossary of the different types
14 of biomarkers, and this is called The Best
15 Resource, it's available on this website. The
16 Best Glossary defines a series of different types
17 of biomarkers, and talks about the way they can
18 be, incorporated in drug development programs.

19 We think a lot about surrogate endpoint
20 biomarkers, which are particularly important, but
21 it's important to consider that, there are many
22 other potential uses of biomarkers in drug

1 development. At the top of the list, here are the
2 biomarkers that are measures of disease presence
3 and status. At the bottom are biomarkers that
4 change with treatment, with treatment
5 interventions.

6 The first one, I'd like to consider is a
7 diagnostic biomarker.

8 This is a biomarker that has data behind
9 it, indicating that it's capable of identifying
10 patients with a particular diagnosis. Prognostic
11 biomarkers are biomarkers that predict a
12 particular outcome, a later outcome. These
13 biomarkers have data indicating that the level of
14 the biomarkers predicts which patients are most
15 likely to have particular outcomes later on, and.
16 It's particularly important for use in enrolling
17 patients in clinical trials, to enrich clinical
18 trials who are most likely to attain an endpoint.
19 This allows smaller and shorter clinical trials.

20 Monitoring biomarkers are biomarkers
21 that are associated with a particular aspect of
22 the disease or condition and can be, used to

1 monitor, the status of that condition over time.

2 Then Pharmacodynamic, or response
3 biomarkers, are a category of biomarker that
4 changes with treatment. These can be, used in a
5 variety of different ways. They can be, used to
6 assess whether the drug hits its target, they can
7 be used to gauge the appropriate dose, and in some
8 cases where they predict clinical outcomes, they
9 can be used as surrogate endpoints in clinical
10 trials, and I'll talk more about that later.

11 When we think about biomarkers, we think
12 about the best biomarker category that they belong
13 to: Monitoring, or biodynamic and so on, and
14 also, the way that, the biomarker is going to be
15 used in clinical trials. We call that, the
16 context of use, and we assess the type and quality
17 of evidence that's required to support that
18 biomarker for that particular use, based on how
19 it's going to be used in clinical trials, so.

20 We think about analytic validation.
21 This would be the sensitivity of the biomarker,
22 the specificity, its reliability and its accuracy,

1 and then we think about clinical validation, which
2 is evidence tying the biomarker to the particular
3 clinical concept of interest, and.

4 For validation, we think about the
5 benefit and risk of the biomarker, so. Benefit
6 risk is obviously different from benefit risk for
7 a drug. Here we're talking about the benefit for
8 making clinical trials be more efficient, for
9 example, and the risk is what are the
10 consequences, if the biomarker doesn't accurately
11 measure the concept of interest, so. For example,
12 if you're using a biomarker as a surrogate
13 endpoint, and it doesn't actually predict the
14 relevant, later clinical outcome, then patients
15 can be treated with the drug without having the
16 benefit of the treatment, and that would represent
17 a risk.

18 There are three different ways that
19 biomarkers can be, incorporated in drug
20 development programs.

21 The first, shown here, is the drug
22 approval process would be for a pharmaceutical

1 company sponsor to submit the data to support use
2 of the biomarker to their IND, their
3 investigational drug application. Next is by
4 scientific community consensus, which plays an
5 important role.

6 And the third is through the biomarker
7 qualification program, this is the program that's
8 administered by my office. We have a program for
9 clinical outcome assessments, another program for
10 qualification of biomarkers, and a third, which is
11 the I-Scan program for drug development tools that
12 don't fit neatly as a clinical outcome assessment,
13 or as a biomarker.

14 And these three ways that biomarkers can
15 be incorporated in clinical development programs
16 are not independent, they intersect in important
17 ways.

18 For example, a biomarker can start out
19 as a biomarker that's qualified for one particular
20 use in the biomarker qualification program. Then
21 pharmaceutical companies can incorporate that
22 biomarker into their clinical trial and later, get

1 evidence that ties that to later clinical
2 outcomes, so. It might be, used for example, as a
3 reasonably likely surrogate endpoint, or as a
4 surrogate endpoint biomarker.

5 The biomarker qualification process was,
6 put in place by legislation, the 21st Century
7 Cures Act. The process begins with submission of
8 a letter of intent, and then, if that's accepted,
9 by the FDA then, the requester will submit a
10 qualification plan, stating the data that they're
11 planning to gather and how they'll analyze it to
12 validate the biomarker for the particular context
13 of use. And then, they'll do their analysis and
14 put together a full qualification package, and
15 submit that to the FDA. If that's accepted, then
16 we put on our website the biomarker, in the
17 context of use, and. That biomarker can then be
18 used in any drug development program for that same
19 context of use, so this is a major advantage of,
20 qualifying a biomarker through the qualification
21 program.

22 Next, I'm going to turn to a discussion

1 of surrogate endpoint biomarkers, so.

2 Surrogate endpoint biomarkers are
3 pharmacodynamic, or response biomarkers. It's
4 important to consider that, to support approval,
5 FDA expects substantial evidence of effectiveness
6 that shows that a drug improves a clinically
7 meaningful outcome, namely a way that a patient
8 feels, functions, or survives.

9 In some cases, this isn't measured
10 directly for approval, so. In one case with a
11 validated surrogate endpoint, this would be a
12 surrogate endpoint that's accepted by FDA, based
13 on data that the effect on the biomarker predicts
14 a specific clinical outcome. Validated endpoints
15 have strong and diverse evidence supporting the
16 relationship of the biomarker to the outcome, and
17 these are, used to support traditional approval.

18 In certain situations, reasonably likely
19 surrogate endpoints can be, accepted for
20 accelerated approval. This would be an endpoint
21 that's supported by strong mechanistic and or
22 epidemiologic rationale, such as that, an effect

1 on the surrogate endpoint is expected to be
2 correlated with a clinical benefit, but hasn't yet
3 reached the level of standard for validation.

4 These reasonably likely surrogate endpoints are,
5 used for accelerated approval, for products
6 intended to treat a serious or life threatening,
7 disease or condition.

8 It's important to understand that there
9 are limitations to the use of surrogate endpoints.
10 They are not a direct measure of the way a patient
11 functions, feels, or survives. Instead, they're
12 intended to reflect and predict the clinical
13 benefit, but that's not directly measured by the
14 surrogate endpoint outcome.

15 With the surrogate endpoint, the benefit
16 risk therefore has to be, based on assumptions and
17 predictions of benefit. And there are situations
18 where biomarkers may fail to predict clinical
19 benefit. For a surrogate endpoint that's,
20 reasonably likely to predict a clinical benefit,
21 and is relied on to support accelerated approval.
22 A post-marketing confirmatory trial is required to

1 confirm the clinical benefit.

2 Some of the limitations for surrogate
3 endpoints are, shown here: It is helpful for use
4 of a biomarker, if it's indeed on the causal
5 pathway that's modulated by the drug, causal
6 pathway to disease, that's modulated by the drug,
7 but in some cases, the surrogate is actually not
8 on this causal pathway, but is, correlated with
9 outcomes. In this case, the drug can have an
10 effect on the biomarker, but actually not have an
11 effect on the clinical outcome, and. In other
12 cases, drugs can cause adverse effects on the
13 desired clinical outcome through a pathway that's
14 not reflected by the biomarker, or the drug can
15 have toxicities that affect the risk benefit of
16 treatment, so. These are situations in which, the
17 surrogate endpoint may not predict, clinical
18 benefit.

19 There are, a wide variety of different
20 types of pharmacodynamic biomarkers, some are on
21 the causal pathway, some reflect, target
22 engagement. They're biomarkers that reflect the

1 particular pathways leading to disease.

2 Some biomarkers reflect organ injury or
3 organ function. These can, lead into clinical
4 endpoints but may not, be directly related. An
5 example of validated surrogate is Low Density,
6 Lipoprotein cholesterol. This is, used as a
7 surrogate for cardiovascular outcomes.

8 These are based on trial level, evidence
9 of surrogacy, as shown on the curve on the left,
10 where the differences in the achieved levels of
11 decrease in LDL cholesterol are associated with
12 the relative risk of major cardiovascular events.
13 And you can see, these are displayed on the line
14 indicating a close correlation between, the impact
15 of the drug on the biomarker corresponding to the
16 impact of the drug on the disease outcome, and
17 similarly, in eight non-Statin trials shown on the
18 right, a similar correspondence has been seen.

19 The situation is not always, seen with
20 other potential surrogate endpoint biomarkers, so.
21 Shown here is an example of High Density
22 Lipoprotein as a surrogate. There was strong

1 epidemiologic data indicating that HDL cholesterol
2 was highly associated with cardiovascular
3 outcomes, as shown by the graph on the left here,
4 where the level of HDL cholesterol was highly
5 associated with the hazard ratio for
6 cardiovascular events.

7 However, when drugs were, developed,
8 that increased HDL cholesterol, it was found, that
9 there was actually no correspondence between the
10 increase in HDL cholesterol and cardiovascular
11 events, so. This was a situation where a
12 potential surrogate endpoint biomarker actually
13 did not predict clinical outcomes.

14 A variety of sources of data can support
15 use of biomarkers as surrogates.

16 Randomized trial treatment group level
17 data is some of the strongest evidence that we
18 have. Individual patient level data showing a
19 correspondence between the biomarker and the
20 clinical outcome is helpful.

21 Observational data, mechanistic data are
22 very, very important in understanding how the

1 biomarker may be associated with clinical
2 outcomes. Pharmacodynamic studies, human genetic
3 data, and translational animal models can all be
4 helpful, and shown on the right is a schematic
5 that shows that, the more data is needed to
6 support a validated surrogate, and quantitatively
7 less data is generally seen with reasonably likely
8 surrogate endpoint biomarkers.

9 I'm going to end with two examples of
10 biomarkers that were shown to be reasonably likely
11 surrogate endpoint biomarkers.

12 The first one I'll begin with is, total
13 kidney volume as a reasonably likely surrogate
14 endpoint biomarker for Autosomal dominant,
15 Polycystic kidney disease. This work was based on
16 a consortium that sought to associate total kidney
17 volume with decreases in kidney function over
18 time, and this consortium was put together by The
19 Critical Path Institute, and included participants
20 from academia, from industry, and from patient
21 groups, to pull together all the data to support
22 use of this biomarker in clinical trials.

1 What's shown here is the model that was
2 put together by this consortium that was able to
3 associate total kidney volume at baseline along
4 with the covariance of estimated GFR at baseline
5 and age to predict the likelihood of having a 30
6 percent decrease in estimated Glomerular
7 Filtration Rate over time, as shown on the graph
8 on the right.

9 These data allowed the biomarker to be
10 initially qualified as a prognostic biomarker
11 based on these modeling results. Subsequently,
12 the biomarker was, supplied in individual drug
13 development programs by pharmaceutical company
14 sponsors and the data supported acceptance by the
15 FDA review division of total kidney volume as a
16 reasonably likely surrogate endpoint for
17 accelerated approval.

18 The other example I'd like to share is
19 proteinuria for IGA nephropathy as a reasonably
20 likely surrogate endpoint.

21 There were, three types of data that
22 were important, in this validation. The first

1 was, mechanistic data tying urine protein to
2 kidney damage. The second was, epidemiologic
3 studies showing a consistent association between
4 the severity and duration, of Proteinuria and loss
5 of kidney function. And the third was,
6 interventional trials that showed an association
7 between changes in Proteinuria and clinical
8 outcomes.

9 The graph, shown here shows, three
10 different conditions, kidney diseases, and the
11 association between the baseline levels of
12 proteinuria and loss in, and the slope of loss of
13 kidney function over time. Starting on the right,
14 IG Nephropathy, you can see almost a linear
15 association between the level of proteinuria, as
16 shown on the X-axis at the top, varying from zero
17 to greater than five grams per liter, with the
18 higher levels of proteinuria associated with a
19 steeper slope of loss of kidney function over
20 time.

21 An association between proteinuria and
22 loss of kidney function was, also seen with focal

1 segmental glomerulosclerosis, in the middle, and
2 membranous glomerulopathy on the left, but the
3 association was less strong at lower levels of
4 proteinuria.

5 In those two diseases, there was less of
6 an association with loss of kidney volume, so some
7 biomarkers may be specific for a particular
8 disease and may not be applicable to other related
9 diseases. Formally, trial level surrogacy was
10 shown by associating the treatment effect of
11 different drugs on proteinuria, versus the
12 treatment effect on the slope of loss of kidney
13 function over time, as shown on the Y-axis.

14 The four studies shown are where the
15 vertical and horizontal lines intersect.

16 On the right are studies where there was
17 relatively little effect of the drug on
18 proteinuria, and similarly there was little effect
19 on the slope of loss of kidney function. In
20 contrast, with the five studies in the lower left
21 quadrant, there was an association between
22 reducing proteinuria, and a less steep slope to

1 the curve of loss of kidney function over time,
2 providing evidence that the biomarker was indeed
3 associated with later clinical outcomes.

4 Supporting a surrogate means
5 accumulating variety from a variety of different
6 sources, it's context dependent. Depends on what
7 type of disease you're talking about.

8 It's important to think about what the
9 risks of approval based on a surrogate endpoint
10 might be. Different levels of evidence are,
11 needed for a validated surrogate versus a
12 reasonably likely surrogate, and multiple sources
13 of evidence, are important, biologic plausibility,
14 supported by a varying extent of clinical
15 pharmacology and clinical trial evidence. And,
16 finally, convergence of evidence is, really
17 helpful if you have evidence from a variety of
18 different sources that all point in the same
19 direction. This is among the most persuasive ways
20 of making a case for a surrogate endpoint
21 biomarker.

22 And with that, I'll end and here are

1 some references for you for some of the things
2 I've talked about, thank you for your attention.

3 DR. KASLOW: Thank you, Dr. Siegel, for
4 the overview of FDA's biomarker, program.

5 I'm David Kaslow, and on behalf of the
6 Office of Vaccines Research and Review, let me add
7 my warm welcome to this FDA public workshop on
8 biomarker driven drug development, and allergenic
9 diseases, and asthma.

10 So this first session is, really meant
11 to provide the regulatory foundation for the rest
12 of the day. We've had one presentation from the
13 FDA, there are five others, three more from FDA
14 colleagues, one from the EMA, and one from U.S.
15 NIH. Following these presentations, we will have
16 a Q-A period and a panel discussion, so.

17 Next up is Prof. Stefan Vieths, who's
18 been the acting president of the Paul Ehrlich
19 Institute since the beginning of this year. From
20 2002 to 2017, Prof. Vieths was the director, and
21 vice president of the Paul Ehrlich Institute.
22 He's been a long designated expert in EMA and

1 European Pharmacopoeia Commission, as well as the
2 Chairman of the Specialist Conference on
3 International Paul Ehrlich Seminar, Allergen
4 Products for Diagnosis and Therapy, Regulation and
5 Science, since 2002, and he is well positioned to
6 present EMA biomarker program. Prof. Vieths?

7 DR. VIETHS: Thank you very much, for
8 the kind introduction, so. There will be some
9 redundancies with the previous presentation, I
10 think, but as always in Europe, things are a bit
11 more complicated, so you will see that, it's not
12 as straightforward as it is here.

13 I work for the Paul Ehrlich Institute.
14 We are one of the two national competent
15 authorities for human medicines in Germany, there
16 is another one for veterinary drugs, and we are
17 part of the European Network.

18 The European Medicines Agency is mainly
19 coordinating the regulatory procedures, but not
20 making the decisions. The decisions are always
21 made by a committee, at the EMA, where the
22 representatives in this committee are members of

1 the national medical agencies, so from this
2 mechanism you can already recognize that, it will
3 be more complicated than it is here.

4 In addition, when you go for a license
5 of a drug, the EMA selects two member states as
6 rapporteur and co- rapporteur, and these two
7 member states do the assessment of a drug, and.
8 In a similar way, the qualification of biomarkers
9 is also a team effort, and is not, decided by a
10 single medical agency. So how can I continue this
11 one? Okay, so of course, I'm expressing my
12 personal views here, and not the views of my
13 agency, but of course my opinion has some impact
14 at the agency, so.

15 I will give a short introduction to, the
16 biomarkers field. This will be a little bit
17 redundant of what you have heard before, and then
18 I will go for the EMA qualification of novel
19 methodologies, and then discuss a little bit, the
20 regulatory aspects of biomarkers in allergen
21 immunotherapy, so this you have already heard
22 before. I will just address what is in this blue

1 box here.

2 I think biomarkers in clinical trials
3 can help identify specific patient populations
4 that are, more likely to benefit from a particular
5 intervention. Biomarkers provide insight into the
6 mechanism of action of, the drug or treatment, we
7 will hear much more about this during the day.

8 Of course, biomarkers enable the
9 assessment of a treatment response and efficacy,
10 if they are, well selected. And if you define
11 biomarkers performance, you have to consider
12 scientific validity, so the rationale for
13 biomarker selection, analytical validity of the
14 biomarker, so there should be strong and reliable
15 performance metrics of the biomarker, and
16 accuracy, precision, and reproducibility of the
17 test should be defined and known.

18 Clinical validity is important of
19 course, this is the main aspect that the relevance
20 of the test to the clinical condition is,
21 understood and validated, and. At the end, what
22 we want to know is the clinical utility of a

1 biomarker.

2 One thing that has not, been addressed
3 in the previous presentation is companion
4 diagnostics, so. When you use laboratory tests or
5 other tests in a clinical trial, to define the
6 population, for example, then you're using
7 companion diagnostics, and these companion
8 diagnostics also are biomarkers.

9 In the EU, there is a new regulation on
10 in vitro diagnostics applied in 2022, or came into
11 effect in 2022, and in this regulation, companion
12 diagnostics are legally defined, so.

13 They are devices that are essential for,
14 the safe and effective use of a corresponding
15 medicinal product, to either identify patients who
16 are most likely to benefit from the corresponding
17 medicinal product, or identify before and during
18 treatments, patients likely to be at increased
19 risk for serious adverse reactions.

20 And these in vitro diagnostics are risk
21 classified in the EU, and when they are used as
22 companion diagnostics, they are at least Class C,

1 or higher. The highest is Class D, depending on
2 the risk class, and they are required for CE
3 marketing. They are requiring a conformity
4 assessment by a notified body, including
5 consultation of a competent medicines authority
6 responsible for the corresponding medicine, and
7 so.

8 This means that in the EU, when you run
9 clinical trials where you are using in vitro
10 diagnostics, for example to measure biomarkers,
11 you have two separate regulatory procedures.

12 One is the authorization or licensing of
13 the drug on the top of this slide, where the
14 biomarker clinical trials are done and then, in a
15 marketing authorization procedure, EMA and
16 national competent authorities decide about the
17 marketing authorization. Whereas for companion
18 diagnostics, even if they are, used for the same
19 kind of treatment, you have to perform clinical
20 performance studies, and then a private
21 organization, a notified body, decides about the
22 conformity assessment of this biomarker, and then

1 in vitro diagnostics receives the CE
2 certification, so.

3 These are separate procedures, but often
4 of course done within the same development
5 program, and with the same clinical trial, but you
6 have to take, this into consideration, if you want
7 to use a biomarker in your drug development
8 program.

9 The perfect biomarker, of course would
10 be consistent, fast and economical. It should
11 provide us with quantitative differences that are
12 sufficiently large to allow conclusions. It
13 should be reliably and easily be quantified, like
14 in biological fluids, and it should have a
15 correlation with a relevant clinical outcome, that
16 is verified.

17 This we have already seen before, there
18 are a lot of different biomarkers used in clinical
19 trials, from genetic biomarkers, to molecular
20 biomarkers, protein levels, or gene expression
21 patterns. There are cellular biomarkers, numbers,
22 frequencies of specific cell populations, for

1 example. Imaging techniques are used and, also
2 clinical biomarkers, could be used, like blood
3 pressure, heart rate, or symptom severity for all
4 of them.

5 Of course validation is, needed when you
6 look at the development process of drugs. You can
7 use biomarkers, in basic research, to for example,
8 better understand molecular pathways. You can use
9 it in discovery and design, to better understand
10 mechanism of action, and select targets in
11 nonclinical development, to define clinical safety
12 in clinical development for stratification
13 enrichment, patient selection, dose selection, to
14 better understand clinical safety or efficacy.

15 And after, marketing authorization you
16 may use them for monitoring therapeutic responses.
17 On the lower part of the slide you can see some
18 regulatory documents in this field, and I would
19 now, like to address the EMA, the European
20 Medicines Agency, Qualification of Novel
21 Methodologies Program, so.

22 This is what you can see at the EMA

1 website, it's called Qualification of Novel
2 Methodologies for Medicine Development. This is
3 of course a quite broad scope, so it covers
4 biomarkers, but it's not restricted to biomarkers,
5 and if you look at the key aspects of this
6 procedure, it's a voluntary procedure involving
7 EMA committees.

8 SAWP is the Scientific Advice Working
9 Party, and the CHMP is the Committee of Medicines
10 for Human Use, also providing the opinions for
11 authorization of medicines. This qualification
12 guidance of EMA came into force in 2008, and the
13 first clinical biomarker qualification by EMA was
14 done in 2011, for Alzheimer's disease in general.

15 It is possible to involve non-EU
16 regulatory agencies, like in a joint procedure
17 with EMA and FDA, for example. There are two
18 types, two steps, it's I think, quite similar to
19 what you have here at FDA. The first is a
20 qualification advice, where you come up with a
21 concept or an idea, and discuss this with the
22 CHMP, or the Scientific Advice Working Party.

1 When the data are still preliminary, you
2 get an advice on future studies to be performed in
3 a confidential document, which is a letter that
4 the applicant receives, and if it's positive, you
5 get a letter of support. If the biomarker is
6 considered to be, promising, the second step is to
7 go for a CHMP Qualification Opinion. This is
8 defining the acceptability of the proposed
9 biomarker for specific use. It includes a
10 scientific assessment report and it can result in
11 the amendment of relevant regulatory guidelines,
12 so.

13 The essential considerations for
14 successful qualification of novel methodologies is
15 the definition of the context of use, selection of
16 endpoint, a statistical analysis plan,
17 demonstration of clinical utility, standard of
18 truth or thoroughbred standard of truth, and
19 appropriateness of the analytical platform, and
20 some others may also be considered, so.

21 This is how the validation procedure
22 looks like: You submit an application and the

1 procedure starts at day zero. The agency has 60
2 days, to prepare for it. At day 90, you should
3 have a scientific advice working party
4 recommendation, then when you go for the upper
5 part, if you go for a qualification advice, this
6 recommendation is adopted by the Committee for
7 Human Medicines. And then, the consortium, if
8 it's positive, gets a letter of support (in the
9 lower part), this is the opinion procedure. You
10 have, again a recommendation by the scientific
11 advice working party. You get a discussion at the
12 committee at the CHMP committee at EMA. The draft
13 opinion is, published for public consultation, and
14 once it is adopted, the biomarker is accepted as
15 regulatory standard for the claimed use.

16 In addition, of course, what companies
17 can do is to go for a separate scientific advice,
18 without going for a qualification procedure. This
19 could lead to, let's say, a recommendation to use
20 one biomarker for one specific development
21 program, and then it's not public, so.

22 What you have accepted as a biomarker on

1 the EMA website is only part of the picture of the
2 biomarker being used in development of medicines
3 in the EU. So now, there is a nice paper
4 reviewing what has been, done in Europe, by Dutch
5 authors I think, published in 2022, covering the
6 years from 2008 to 2020.

7 There were 86 biomarker related
8 procedures, seven procedures per year, at average,
9 and a lot of follow up procedures. The main
10 median duration was four months for qualification
11 advice, and 11.5 months for qualification
12 opinions, and there are now 13 qualified
13 biomarkers.

14 The most common context of use was
15 patient selection, stratification and or
16 enrichment, efficacy, and safety. The most common
17 disease area among all contexts of uses was
18 Alzheimer's disease. There was, a low number of
19 procedures relating to genetic biomarkers. So
20 far, most procedures were going on with soluble
21 and imaging biomarkers, and there is an increasing
22 number of consortium initiated procedure. This

1 means that, for example, large EU research
2 projects would go for such a procedure because
3 they want to have the information available for
4 everybody, and not just for one company, so.

5 The issues that, have been raised during
6 these procedures are mainly, in three areas of:
7 Either their validity, because there were
8 deficiencies in the analytical method,
9 validations, and methodological challenges, or in
10 reproducibility, or standardization. Biomarker
11 properties, in terms of clinical- relevant changes
12 and usefulness, and chosen cutoff values, and
13 general, study designs. For example, study
14 population on period, responder versus
15 non-responder definition, study setup, and so on.
16 Whereas the other areas, like here, the context of
17 youth, data analysis and evidence were with less
18 frequency, leading to issues during the procedure,
19 so.

20 Now, a few words about biomarkers and,
21 allergen immunotherapy, I mean, we will hear a lot
22 more about this in the afternoon, so there is of

1 course quite a good understanding, what happens
2 during allergen immunotherapy.

3 A lot of parameters are going up during
4 allergen immunotherapy, like antibody responses,
5 cellular responses, and so on. And a lot of
6 parameters are decreased during allergen
7 immunotherapy, so this is, I think, good, and we
8 understand much, much better what is going on now,
9 compared to 20 years ago, so this is a good
10 perspective for developing reliable biomarkers for
11 allergen immunotherapy, well, we are now.

12 From the regulatory point of view, I
13 would like to say is that there is not a lot, so
14 no potential biomarker is currently validated for
15 allergen immunotherapy in terms of regulatory
16 acceptance, but they are commonly used.

17 For example, in those finding studies,
18 provocation testing, immunological parameters,
19 antibody responses, and so on, and even if a
20 biomarker does not completely qualify as a full
21 surrogate endpoint, it can still result in very
22 valuable information. For example, decision

1 making on a company level, to continue pursuing or
2 abandoning a specific product. And it can, also
3 be very supportive in regulatory procedures, to
4 argue that an immunologically relevant effect is
5 observed, so.

6 It's quite regularly applied in Germany
7 within marketing authorization procedures. For
8 example, companies use IgE responses to include
9 patients, they monitor responses to individual
10 allergens during immunotherapy, and so on. What
11 we have to keep in mind is that if you are in
12 allergy immunotherapy, you want to treat, let's
13 say, mite allergy or grass pollen allergy, you
14 don't want to treat grass pollen allergy in
15 patients with IgE, to P-1only. And if you ask the
16 regulators for such a kind of stratification also,
17 your indication will be a bit more restrictive.

18 And I think this is something that was
19 also inhibiting a bit the use of, especially
20 allergen biomarkers in the development of allergen
21 immunotherapy products in the past. So at the
22 end, I think next step that we need to follow is,

1 to identify and verify the most promising and
2 consistent potential biomarkers for allergen
3 immunotherapy.

4 Start validation programs for these
5 biomarkers once promising candidates are
6 available. Get in touch early with regulators,
7 ask for scientific advice, and involve them in the
8 validation programs. I think there is a massive
9 understanding of relevant immunological and
10 molecular events in allergen immunotherapies, so
11 the ground-work is being laid to screen for
12 promising biomarkers with higher precision than
13 the ones that we have currently available in the
14 literature, so.

15 With this, I think I'm finished. I
16 would like to thank you for your attention, and
17 acknowledge contributions by a few colleagues, Dr.
18 Andreas Bonaz, Dr. Melanie Albrecht, Susan Kau,
19 Jorge Engelbertz, and Sander from our
20 Immunological Division, thank you very much for
21 your attention.

22 DR. KASLOW: Thank you so much, Prof.

1 Vieths, indeed, a bit more complex in the EU, so.
2 Next up is Peter Stein, who is currently the
3 director of the Office of New Drugs. He joined
4 FDA in 2016 as the deputy director, after a
5 20-year career in the pharmaceutical industry,
6 focused on developing drugs for diabetes and
7 related disorders. Dr. Stein will review the role
8 of translational science in biomarker and drug
9 development.

10 DR. STEIN: Great, thank you very much
11 and good morning. Certainly, a pleasure to be
12 here, and it looks like it'll be a terrific
13 workshop. My task is really, just to sort of,
14 give a high level overview of where, I might
15 consider translational science fitting usual
16 disclaimer.

17 Just as a sort of brief overview, it's
18 worth thinking about some of the changes in the
19 drugs that we're developing and the diseases we're
20 targeting, which has impacted how we think about
21 translational science.

22 I'll say a few words about, how

1 different disease population size impacts design
2 and conduct of drug development, but also the
3 implications of that for the use of translational
4 medicine, and surrogate endpoints. Talk a bit
5 about rare and small population, drug development
6 and regulation, and. Just make the point that
7 this really depends more on the use of
8 translational medicine, than traditional
9 development, which was 20 or 30 years ago,
10 targeting large common chronic diseases, and then.
11 A little bit more about the role of translational
12 science.

13 I suspect you've seen this kind of
14 graphic before, which really depicts the fact that
15 we're seeing a transition. From drugs that 20
16 years ago targeted common chronic diseases I
17 mentioned, and increasingly now are targeting rare
18 diseases and small populations, subtypes of more
19 common diseases, so that right now, about half of
20 the new molecular entities are targeting drugs for
21 orphan indications.

22 There are differences, and I think it's

1 worth thinking about that, because it has
2 implications for the use of translational science.
3 Obviously, stating somewhat the obvious in terms
4 of the characteristics of development in the
5 context of common chronic diseases. We have large
6 populations, the ability to run two or more large,
7 adequate well, controlled trials, a wide range of
8 disorders from symptomatic to serious progressive
9 diseases, but typically with a well, understood
10 natural history. And more often than not,
11 available FDA guidance, and certainly also,
12 precedent endpoints that are generally well
13 accepted and standardized, but when we move to
14 rare disease drug development, we're talking about
15 small populations, which can make recruitment
16 difficult, need flexibility in study design,
17 because of the variations in size and the
18 knowledge about the diseases.

19 These are typically progressive,
20 serious, life limiting or life threatening
21 diseases, and with substantial unmet need. With
22 also a lack of precedent for how to go about drug

1 development, and quite diverse, based upon both
2 genotypic and phenotypic diversity, with a natural
3 history that's not typically well characterized,
4 and a lack of drug development tools and
5 endpoints, biomarkers and the like.

6 And of course, with common occurrence in
7 kids, which also modifies how, trials can be
8 conducted. When we think about common disease
9 drug development, we're really talking about,
10 typically, is translational science having a very
11 distinct role, I think. Just in the last talks,
12 you've heard about the many different roles in
13 earlier development, obviously, in terms of proof
14 of concept, dose selection, exposure response,
15 biomarkers that are developed to improve the
16 efficiency of the larger trials. But the base of
17 the application is really, two or more large,
18 adequate, well controlled, randomized clinical
19 trials for common diseases.

20 When we move to the context of a rare
21 disease, drug development program, the role of
22 translational science really is substantially

1 larger. Of course, we still have to have this on
2 the base of a clinical trial, an adequate will
3 control trial that can assess the effect of the
4 drug in that disorder. But we also have to
5 consider what translational science can deliver,
6 so surrogate endpoints that might be part of a
7 clinical trial, confirmatory evidence that might
8 accompany the clinical trial, and.

9 I want to say, more about both, of these
10 areas, where translational science is so
11 important. But to step back, for a moment and
12 just talk about in the US, the pathways and
13 requirements for drug approval in a sort of
14 simplistic way. If omitting other components that
15 are necessary for drug approval, we can think
16 about two particularly important components.

17 One is the demonstration of
18 effectiveness. The standard that we apply is the
19 substantial evidence of effectiveness standard,
20 which is in statute, and is based upon adequate,
21 well controlled, trials that are explicated in
22 regulation. As those criteria for an adequate,

1 well controlled trial are exactly what you think
2 of in any trial that is going to have scientific
3 integrity.

4 The second step, though, is concluding
5 that the drug's benefits outweigh its risk. So
6 presence of substantial evidence of effectiveness
7 and the benefit outweigh the risk, which is how we
8 look at the safety that we see in characterizing
9 the drug's profile. We have a guidance that was
10 relatively recently released that talks about
11 benefit risk in the context of drug regulation and
12 drug approval. When we think about the
13 substantial evidence of effect in this standard
14 though, there are different ways that this can be,
15 met.

16 As I said, for common chronic diseases,
17 this is the top row, which is two or more adequate
18 well controlled studies. But when we think about
19 moving this into rare disease drug development, it
20 can be used in other contexts as well, we can
21 think of, one adequate and well controlled trial
22 and confirmatory evidence, which is another way

1 that, we can meet substantial evidence of
2 effectiveness. And I'm going to talk more about
3 confirmatory evidence, because that's really
4 something where translational science has a very
5 large role.

6 Also want to mention the approval
7 pathways, of course, we have two different
8 approval pathways in the U.S., traditional
9 approval, which is, based upon a clinical
10 endpoint, an endpoint that reflects how patients
11 feel, function or survive. We also have the
12 accelerated approval pathway, and that's a pathway
13 that's based upon a surrogate, or an intermediate
14 clinical endpoint, a surrogate that's considered
15 reasonably likely to predict the outcome, to
16 predict benefit that the drug may offer, so.

17 Again, two different endpoints in the
18 context of accelerated approval. A reasonably
19 likely surrogate, which is, again, a surrogate
20 measure that's not validated as predicting
21 clinical benefit. That would be a traditional
22 approval endpoint, but it's concluded to be

1 reasonably likely to predict clinical benefit, an
2 acceptance of some uncertainty. It clearly still
3 requires data to support that the surrogate
4 predicts the clinical benefit of interest, but it
5 does allow for more uncertainty.

6 An intermediate clinical endpoint, I'm
7 not going to say more about, but a clinical
8 endpoint that ultimately will predict durable,
9 important clinical benefit. In the context of
10 accelerated approval, we do require that there is
11 a post- marketing trial that is preferably
12 ongoing, or that's initiated that can verify and
13 describe the anticipated clinical benefit, again,
14 the clinical benefit on, how patients feel,
15 function, or survive, so.

16 Now let's move to talking about the uses
17 of translational science. And I want to say a few
18 more words about confirmatory evidence, then turn
19 to talking about surrogate endpoints.

20 So let's start with confirmatory
21 evidence. Confirmatory evidence is a range of
22 different things.

1 Unlike some, where we think about
2 clinical endpoints or surrogates, confirmatory
3 evidence is a wide range of different types of
4 information. Indeed, it can even be, a body of
5 information that, supports the finding from the
6 clinical trial.

7 We recently released a guidance that
8 talks about the different sources of confirmatory
9 evidence, and it lists a number of different
10 potential sources. Some of these are clinical
11 referencing of a prior approval that's in a
12 related condition, information from natural
13 history, from other members of the pharmacological
14 class, but very importantly, two components that
15 are directly relevant to translational science,
16 mechanistic or pharmacynamic evidence.

17 This can come from surrogates, this can
18 come from biomarkers that show that the drug has
19 engagement and is working in the pathway of the
20 disease pathogenesis, but also evidence from an
21 animal model. And of course, there are a wide
22 range of uses of animal model in this context, so

1 here, we're talking about animal models that may
2 be translational. Now, they don't have to be, and
3 animal models generally don't perfectly replicate
4 the human disease but, it has to have some basic
5 similarity in its natural history, in its
6 presentation, in its outcome, and what we
7 understand about, its pathogenesis and the role of
8 the drug pharmacology as it alters that pathway,
9 so.

10 A translational animal model can also
11 serve as confirmatory evidence. Now, I do want to
12 just make the point that, the body of
13 translational of confirmatory evidence can include
14 different components. So there may be a
15 translational animal model, there may be
16 pharmacodynamic endpoints that correlate with what
17 we see in the animal model, and then show that we
18 see that in humans, but the extent, of
19 confirmatory evidence, can vary.

20 When we think about that, it depends
21 upon both, the setting, and the seriousness of the
22 disease, the extent of unmet need, and that helps

1 us understand the extent of acceptable
2 uncertainty, but also the risk. What is the
3 safety profile of the drug, which also drives us
4 to think about, how much uncertainty we can
5 accept? And so, we also have to look at the
6 robustness of the adequate, well controlled trial.
7 How convincing was that trial resolve? And, then,
8 also the robustness of the confirmatory evidence.

9 I could sort of illustrate that in this
10 way, on the right, which is that, the stronger the
11 adequate, well controlled trial, potentially the
12 lesser the amount of confirmatory evidence, the
13 weaker the trial, although it still has to provide
14 evidence of the benefit that the drug is reported
15 to have, the stronger the confirmatory evidence
16 may need to be.

17 I want to talk now a little bit about
18 surrogate endpoints.

19 And I know you've heard already some
20 talks about qualification programs and the various
21 roles of biomarkers, including as surrogate
22 endpoints, and just to remind you, this is from

1 The Best Classification, the NIH FDA
2 classification scheme.

3 We think about a clinical outcome, which
4 describes or reflects, how a patient feels,
5 functions or survives, as I've said already, a
6 biomarker, I think you've heard the definition, so
7 I won't repeat this. A surrogate is a biomarker
8 that predicts, but does not directly measure
9 clinical outcomes, and that's an important
10 distinction.

11 Clinical outcome assessment measures the
12 clinical outcome. Surrogate is a biomarker that
13 predicts that we can expect to see that clinical
14 outcome, but isn't a direct measure of the
15 outcome. Again, I suspect you've seen this
16 already, which is the wide range of biomarkers,
17 which have a whole range of different roles from
18 monitoring, assessing safety, helping us in the
19 enrichment of populations for clinical trials,
20 either as a prognostic biomarker, or a predictive
21 biomarker. But I want to spend a little more time
22 talking about surrogate endpoints, which are

1 response biomarkers, measures of response to
2 treatment.

3 Now, when we think about the range of
4 surrogate endpoints, we tend to lump them into
5 this big bucket of surrogate endpoints, but I
6 think you can start to think about dividing them
7 into different types of surrogate endpoints.

8 There are surrogate endpoints that
9 reflect the cause, for example, levels of a toxin,
10 or measures of an infection, such as HIV RNA, or
11 Hivrna. Those are, biomarkers that look at the
12 etiology of the disease, where we clearly
13 understand the etiology precipitating the outcome,
14 the disease entity. There are many biomarkers
15 that are, mediator biomarkers. These are
16 biomarkers that are on the pathway, in the
17 pathogenesis of the disease, for example, a
18 disease which triggers an inflammatory cascade.
19 Measuring a biomarker along that cascade could
20 turn out to be a surrogate, if it's very closely
21 tied to the outcome. There are certainly also
22 biomarkers or surrogates that reflect the disease

1 outcome. These might be structural biomarkers, or
2 functional biomarkers, for example, a biomarker
3 that measures cardiac injury, CPK, or another type
4 of enzyme, or a biomarker that reflects an
5 inflammatory process, ongoing and structural
6 damage, or. A biomarker that measures functions,
7 such as EGFR, or for example, bone strength.
8 Those might be functional biomarkers that could
9 look at the impairment that's caused by the
10 disease, that we're trying to develop a drug to
11 target.

12 Now, when we think about a surrogate,
13 because we're not directly measuring what matters
14 to patients, how they feel, function, or survive,
15 we're always going to want to prefer to have a
16 clinical outcome, not endpoint, not a surrogate.
17 A clinical endpoint outcome is always preferred
18 because it's directly answering the question we
19 have about the drug. How does it help patients?
20 How do they feel better, function better, or
21 survive longer?

22 Now, because surrogates are typically

1 continuous variables, they're more easily
2 detectable. The effect of the drug on the
3 surrogate is typically earlier, and this typically
4 enables shorter, smaller trials. So certainly, a
5 large advantage, particularly for settings where
6 the disease course is prolonged or where the event
7 rate is very low, and that can be in ultra rare
8 disorders, or in common disorders. For example,
9 drugs for Lipid disorders, for LDL cholesterol
10 lowering, use that as a surrogate because, we
11 recognize that the event rates in cardiovascular
12 trials can be relatively low, and can take a long
13 time to get enough events to be able to assess the
14 effect of the drug.

15 Now, there can be a wide variation of,
16 available evidence that can support a surrogate,
17 and varying types of proposed surrogates as well.

18 I want to talk about something that I
19 think we all worry about with the acceptance of
20 surrogates, which is whether they'll work or not.
21 Does a surrogate actually predict what it purports
22 to predict? What can go wrong? And I'll give you

1 an example of something that went wrong, in terms
2 of the concept that was put forward for the basis
3 of a surrogate.

4 Well, conceptually, the framework for a
5 surrogate looks like, what I have on the right
6 side on top here, which is, you have the disease
7 pathogenesis, the pathogenic sequence. Somewhere
8 on that pathogenic sequence, the drug has its
9 effect on its target, which modulates both,
10 obviously, the pathogenic mechanism and the
11 biomarker, which we assume is on that pathway, is
12 on that causal pathway, and that modulates the
13 clinical outcome. The biomarker change,
14 therefore, is proportionate to the clinical
15 outcome, the optimal circumstance, and we conclude
16 that that biomarker does indeed predict the
17 clinical outcome. The biomarker may be after the
18 clinical outcome.

19 As I said, we can use biomarkers that
20 look at structural or functional alterations, to
21 look to see whether those are, modified. Does the
22 biomarker reflect that there is increasing or

1 reduced damage? That can also be a useful way of
2 determining, whether the drug has the effect it
3 purports to have, but of course, biomarkers can go
4 wrong, and this is in graphics.

5 If you've seen the classic article by
6 Fleming, by Tom Fleming, that was published a
7 number of years ago, that sort of explicated some
8 of the things that could go wrong with a
9 biomarker. Here, the drug modulates the
10 biomarker, but that biomarker isn't on the causal
11 pathway, it's on a different pathway, and the drug
12 modulates, may modulate the clinical outcome
13 pathways. But that relationship between the
14 biomarker and the clinical outcome is not
15 connected, so that it's not on the causal pathway,
16 and the change in the biomarker may not reflect
17 the clinical outcome.

18 The other possibility is, it is on the
19 causal pathway. Here, on the bottom, we see a
20 drug that modulates the causal pathway, the
21 biomarker is changed, but if the drug has other
22 effects, effects that perhaps reduce or attenuate

1 the clinical outcome, or lead to toxicity, then
2 the biomarker is not working as we hope it would
3 work.

4 In the situation where it leads to
5 toxicity, we can't get a sense of the overall risk
6 the drug leads to, because we may only have the
7 biomarker reflecting the clinical outcome, and not
8 the safety profile risks of the drug. In the
9 other circumstance, where the drug has negative
10 effects on attenuating the clinical outcome, the
11 net effect of the drug is not, reflected by the
12 biomarker. The point being, in all of these
13 examples is, the biomarker and the assumption
14 around the biomarker, may not hold, and so it may
15 not reflect the outcome.

16 And that's something we clearly worry
17 about when we're looking at a surrogate that's
18 proposed in the development of a drug for disease.
19 We worry about whether or not the surrogate
20 behaves as it's expected to behave, so here's an
21 example. In some ways, this was sort of the
22 classic example of a biomarker gone awry.

1 Now, actually, this trial was, intended
2 to look at whether the biomarker worked, whether
3 PVC is premature, ventricular contractions
4 actually did predict the outcome of improvement
5 with antiarrhythmic therapy, so. This trial
6 looked at patients after a myocardial infarction
7 who, were having premature ventricular
8 contractions.

9 There was an open label phase, during
10 which several different anti standard, anti
11 arrhythmic, drugs were, used and where suppression
12 of the PVCs, substantial suppression of the PVCs
13 was, demonstrated and then, those patients who had
14 suppression of PVCs with antiarrhythmic drugs,
15 were randomized to matching placebo, or the
16 effective drug, and. The primary endpoint was
17 survival and survival over time, and as you can
18 see on the right, the results were, inverse of
19 what was expected. The placebo survival was
20 better than the drug survival.

21 Well, in thinking about this, we could
22 look at what went wrong. Why did that happen? I

1 put up here, what I suspect was the intended model
2 that, PVCs were a manifestation of the same
3 pathogenic causal pathway as was ventricular
4 tachycardia, or ventricular fibrillation.

5 Therefore, if you reduce PVCs, you should reduce
6 ventricular tachycardia, ventricular fibrillation,
7 sudden death should go down, survival should be
8 improved, but that's not what was observed, so.

9 What might have been going on, and this
10 is just speculative to, just point out that, the
11 models that we think about, in where a surrogate
12 is placed, may not turn out to be validated. In
13 the middle diagram, I'm indicating that it may be
14 that the mechanism of PVCs and the mechanism of
15 VT/VF are distinct, and so suppressing a PVC may
16 not lead to suppression of VT or VF.

17 Now, in that situation, one would have
18 imagined that the drug would have had no effect on
19 deteriorating or improving survival, and so you'd
20 have to postulate, the drug had a negative effect
21 on the outcome as well, (on the bottom). It may
22 be that, it was quite correct, that PVCs are on

1 the causal pathway and represent the same
2 mechanism, but that the drugs, have a direct toxic
3 mechanism that increases VTTF even as the other
4 pathway, through PVCs, reduces VTTF.

5 The point being that, as we think about
6 developing surrogates, we have to think both,
7 about the data that tells us where that's
8 positioned along the causal pathway: Is it
9 reflecting the etiology? Is it on the mediating
10 pathway towards the outcome? Is it reflecting the
11 damage, functional or structural, of that outcome?
12 Is that the pathway it's sitting on, or is it on a
13 different pathway, that either might mediate harm,
14 or might not mediate benefit? In the former,
15 where it actually doesn't look at the net benefit
16 of the drug, and in the latter, where it doesn't
17 reflect the outcome of the disease, so.

18 What are some of the lessons that I
19 think we have to think about with surrogates?

20 First, of all, that there's always some
21 degree of uncertainty when we're using a
22 surrogate. It may be relatively small with a

1 validated surrogate, surrogates that we know and
2 have used for years and years, such as LDL
3 cholesterol, or such as blood pressure for drugs,
4 for hypertension. When we look at surrogates that
5 we accept for accelerated approval, that is
6 reasonably likely surrogates, we accept some
7 greater degree of uncertainty. And I talked about
8 How we think about how much uncertainty might be
9 acceptable? How serious is the disease, what is
10 the unmet need, what is the risk the drug
11 provides, and what is the evidence we have to
12 support that surrogate? The key is to generate
13 high quality translational evidence to support the
14 surrogate. Animal models, pharmacodynamic
15 markers, genetic associations, really, in a sense,
16 a convergence of evidence that supports that
17 surrogate.

18 I do want to just take, sort of a
19 sidestep for a moment, and say a few more words
20 about this, because I think very often in
21 development, what happens, particularly where
22 translational science is going, will be important,

1 whether it's through informatory evidence, or
2 supporting evidence of a surrogate.

3 It's not uncommon for a lot of work
4 early in development, even before clinical studies
5 have been initiated, for there to be work on
6 translational science, development of an animal
7 model, ideas about developing biomarkers into
8 surrogates. But very often, as we move into the
9 clinical sphere, as we move into particularly
10 phase two or phase three development, the work on
11 translational science comes to a grinding halt, or
12 at least it goes down to a trickle, and so. By
13 the time we have to think about that evidence, in
14 concert with the clinical trial result, it's often
15 not as well developed as it ought to be.

16 And that's something I think is a really
17 important message, which is that, if we're moving
18 towards a development program where it's likely to
19 be based upon an adequate, well controlled trial,
20 plus confirmatory evidence, and that confirmatory
21 evidence is going to include translational
22 science. The pathway of development that went

1 through development of the translational animal
2 model evidence to support the surrogate has to
3 continue in parallel with conducting the adequate,
4 well controlled, trial.

5 And I would say, from my observations
6 over the last years, that is often not the case,
7 and so a little bit of, perhaps a message from the
8 sponsor to say, that is a really important
9 investment to make. If you're going to say
10 translational science isn't just in early phases
11 of development, proof of concept, or getting some
12 sense of what exposure is appropriate, but you
13 actually think that's going to be important in
14 supporting the approval of the drug, that work
15 needs investment, time commitment, and continuing
16 effort.

17 As a last point, I'd say, as the last
18 example, I hope illustrates, we really have to
19 think about what assumptions we're making when we
20 are posing that, a surrogate is going to reflect
21 the effect of the drug on the clinical outcome
22 that we're looking for.

1 And I would say, before you suggest a
2 surrogate, think about all of the other models, so
3 you have the model of what looks great, where the
4 biomarker is right on the pathway, but think about
5 what other models there might be, that might make
6 the biomarker or the surrogate go wrong, and test
7 those. What is the evidence that, that isn't the
8 case? What is the evidence that supports your
9 hypothesis of where that surrogate sits, and tests
10 all the assumptions that can be, evaluated?

11 Well, with that very brief overview of
12 translational science, and a small advertisement
13 from the sponsor, thank you for your attention and
14 enjoy the rest of your workshop.

15 DR. KASLOW: Thank you, Dr. Stein, for
16 framing the critical role of translational
17 science, and surrogates in the, regulatory review
18 process, so we'll now turn to Dr. Richard Beger,
19 who will join us virtually. Dr. Beger is
20 currently, the branch chief of Omics modeling,
21 imaging and chemistry branch, in the division of
22 Systems Biology here at U.S. FDA. The Omics

1 Branch consists of Metabolomics, Proteomics, and
2 Tissue Imaging teams that focus on discovering and
3 evaluating translational biomarkers of toxicology
4 and disease. Dr. Berger will review the role of
5 Omics in biomarker applications and discovery, and
6 it looks like. Is he on?

7 DR. BEGER: Yes, this is my slide, thank
8 you. I'd like to thank everybody in the biomarker
9 working group, especially -- for inviting me to
10 give this talk here. I'm very sorry that I can't
11 in person, but I love the talk so far, obviously,
12 in favor of talks you're going to hear about from
13 me, next slide.

14 Systems biology, Omics technologies,
15 there's quite a few out there, there's genetics,
16 genomics, transcriptomics, proteomics,
17 metabolomics, and each one of these has many
18 different ways of collecting that type of data,
19 and they all can provide information for us and
20 provide biomarkers for the next hit, so. NIH
21 defined this as a biomedical research
22 understanding the larger picture be at the level

1 of the organism, tissue, cell, by putting its
2 pieces together, and. Dennis Noble said that,
3 it's all about putting together rather than taking
4 apart, integration rather than reduction, and
5 that's going to be my whole point here, is
6 biomarkers, they integrate. What's happening
7 might be better than what we've been doing by
8 reduction.

9 Next slide - So systems biology, OMICS
10 Biomarkers, these can be used for discovery. All
11 these things are happening in your cell, tissue
12 and organ. You have genome transcriptome, your
13 proteome, your catabolome, your lipidome, and
14 these are all responding to your diet, drug,
15 lifestyle, age and social interactions. It's best
16 to provide, to try to limit those exposures, or to
17 try to capture as much of that as possible before
18 your study.

19 Obviously, the gut microbiome can also
20 play a role on how you're responding. And
21 hopefully, at the end of the holiday, you should
22 get some kind of phenotype that can help us

1 predict, whether the side effects help somebody
2 respond or not respond. That's it.

3 And I'd like to thank the previous
4 speakers for talking about the models of
5 biomarkers and the outcomes on that, thank you.

6 Next slide - So, the Omics biomarker
7 workflow, this is a discovery process, but it can
8 lead you to biomarkers that you need per
9 validation. So each one of these major groups are
10 the sample prep analysis, the bioinformatics data
11 mining, and then you're applying the data, and
12 each one of these has very strict. You should
13 have very strict SOPs, when you're doing
14 multiomics, you're going to have to start thinking
15 about different sample collection tubes, where
16 each one of those metabolomics has to be thought
17 out beforehand.

18 Try to do this beforehand. Have the
19 aliquots made, before putting them in the freezer,
20 and all these other type of issues. So I'll give
21 you very small examples of each type of these
22 things going forward. And what you see at the end

1 of the day is, what we get is, some kind of,
2 hopefully some identified pathways are changed.
3 And also, you're going to start looking at
4 univariate and multivariate biomarkers. I'll give
5 you examples, all the way going through, and at
6 the end of the day, really what you get is a
7 hypothesis, or something that you need to validate
8 when you go back through, what you're going to
9 want to do is, actually analytically verify those
10 biomarkers.

11 During this whole process, you're going
12 to want to have policy control for each one of the
13 genomics that you're doing and go through this
14 process again. And I have to say, one other thing
15 that's really, been bugging me lately is the
16 reporting standards. When you actually report
17 this out there, there's a big discrepancy of how
18 people report metabolites, lipids, proteins in the
19 literature, and. I'm saying that people, if they
20 want to put these biomarkers forward, especially
21 as patterns, we have to come to a concise area and
22 have reporting standards.

1 Next slide, I will actually give a
2 couple of examples down the road on using these
3 processes for immune related studies, so for
4 proteomic technologies, when I first got into CTR
5 25 years ago, or so, people were actually doing
6 gel based, just these 2D gels. They were about
7 the size of a table, and they were trying to find
8 markers. And obviously, this is something that's
9 not done too much anymore.

10 It slowly moved into what they would
11 call, what I would call, mass spec approaches.
12 These would be where you would try to break down,
13 put them on another different gel. You would cut
14 out the slices, you would use a protease to break
15 them down into peptides, measure all the peptides,
16 search the peptides to identify proteins, and when
17 you have a couple of peptides, you would actually
18 be able to say which proteins were changed.

19 Recently, a lot of things, have moved
20 into what I would call the affinity based
21 approaches, and what a lot of people right now,
22 especially in this area, would be using the

1 multiplex immune assays. And these basically are
2 looking at using antibodies to look at 100 or so
3 proteins, these kits are widely used, and
4 recently, in the last few years, what came on
5 board is what these call, these large, I would
6 call affinity-based approaches, but.

7 One of them is the SOMAscan assays, and
8 these use slow off rate modified aptamers. These
9 are sort of, chemical antigens that allow you to
10 have really, reproducible results, and currently
11 you can actually use a very small sample size, and
12 collect up to 11,000 proteins. The Olink assays
13 are very similar, except it uses antibody pairs.
14 You can go on to things that can go on to the
15 transcriptomic arrays, and right now this is up to
16 about 5000 proteins so that you can get quite a
17 bit of information in proteome technologies.

18 Next slide please. Previous back one of
19 the issues with proteomics is, I can't really get
20 a standard, so how do you validate that? And one
21 of the ways that we've been able to do this is
22 actually look at both using SOMAscan and Olink, and

1 do the elevation of the same samples, and so in
2 this way, we're analytically validating the two
3 technologies against each other and this is what
4 we've done previously.

5 We were able to show some of the
6 biomarkers that we found in the prediction of
7 kidney recovery from dialysis were reproducible.
8 Now it doesn't always work out perfectly as it did
9 for like LS-6, but even there we had for FCF-23,
10 we had correlation almost 0.5 and a very high P
11 value because we had a lot of sample patients.

12 Next slide - So for metabolomics there's
13 many, different weighted, Smith, many different
14 flavors out there, targeted, untargeted, two
15 seconds, about semi targeted. And what the
16 standalone biomarker way of doing things, right
17 now is the multipoint calibration curve with the
18 ultonic internal standard isotope resolution and
19 mass spectrometry, and this is what people use for
20 the FDA biomarker guidance.

21 There's, other things out there now
22 where you can be, targeted. Like you could have a

1 standard, additional, multi point, calibration
2 curve that is normalized by similar, internal
3 standards. What I say is, this could be like
4 looking at all 20 amino acids but only having four
5 or five internal standards that are, amino acids.
6 Likewise, you could be looking at maybe 50 or 100
7 different bioacids and still, only be using five
8 or ten bioacids. That would be examples of that,
9 for three would be the same thing, but you're not
10 using similar internal standards. Like if, we're
11 amino acids, you'd be using steroids or something
12 else, which not many people do, but it is out
13 there.

14 And then what I would call now the
15 targeted and untargeted approaches, where you have
16 some stable isotopes that you're using for
17 normalizing just for a few chemicals there, and
18 you're still doing an untargeted collection of a
19 lot of data, and you're using that for
20 normalization, and then. You could have like a
21 whole class there, where you have all the amino
22 acids, but you're still collecting all the other

1 data that's untried.

2 And then, there's the third case, the
3 last case, Number 6, which is a no-calibration
4 curve, and there's actually many different flavors
5 of this, where you're actually doing especially
6 four and five, where you can do normalization and
7 QC at the same time, and that kind of stuff.
8 These actually are now, what I would call a
9 different class, names, what are called
10 semi-targeted metabolites, but. If people really
11 want to start looking at multiplex biomarkers,
12 we're going to have to actually standardize, and
13 have guidance, I believe, for these other steps,
14 two, three, and four, going forward.

15 Next slide - one way you can have
16 really, good data in a metabolomics experiment, or
17 similar type of experiment, is using really, good
18 QC, and you can have QC standards for actually
19 every step of the way, highlighted.

20 You can have it during your sample prep,
21 your analytical sample analysis, data processing,
22 and your data analysis at the end. There's out

1 there, there's reference libraries, standard
2 mixtures that you can buy, that can help you.

3 These things that you can measure are
4 actually one of the more important things, are
5 like system suitability before you even start the
6 experiment. What really helps down the road is
7 that, for comparison's sake, they have these, what
8 I would call reference and test materials, that
9 like, NIST would put out, that every lab can use,
10 and you can compare across labs. And what a lot
11 of people use are actually like pool QCS, which
12 are actually the closest samples that you might
13 have to your study, but they don't allow you to go
14 from one lab to another.

15 Next slide - one of the issues that you
16 can come across is, as I said, you have to really
17 follow your SOPs, and so.

18 We did a study a few years ago where we
19 collected samples from 20 humans, and we did, and
20 collected six tubes from each subject, and we did
21 a different pre-lab sample prep for each one of
22 those samples, and two of them for blood. One was

1 at zero degrees, one was for six hours at room
2 temperature, one was a Hemolysis, one was a
3 control, a normal way, and then one was plasma at
4 four degrees for 24 hours, and plasma 24 hours at
5 room temperature.

6 And here, we looked at metabolites,
7 peptides and inflammation, cytokines and stuff
8 like that. The HGA plot shows that having samples
9 at room temperature can really affect your data
10 analysis of what you see, so you have to be
11 really, careful on your sops, and especially avoid
12 room temperature.

13 Next, slide please. So now, I'm going
14 to go on and talk about two studies that are sort
15 of related to immunology.

16 One is Leishmania parasite, it is a
17 blood borne pathogen that can be, transmitted by
18 transmission or, bite of the inflected sampling.
19 It is a rare disease (?), and currently, blood
20 donor screening is not an option, because it does
21 not meet the threshold for sufficient equivalence.
22 Standard drug treatments to treat the infection

1 mod are limited and often ineffective. However,
2 vaccination of U.S. travelers and military
3 personnel is, stationed in areas that could be
4 complementary measures to control the transmission
5 of this life collection.

6 One of the things that's coming up, is
7 they've used live attenuated listing of parasites
8 that are under investigation for candidate
9 biomarkers, and these ones are deletion of the
10 centrum in the Leishmania parasite LMCN minus.
11 Minus and this, leads to impaired cell division.

12 Next slide please. So the evaluation of
13 this vaccine by immunization, by delay type,
14 hypersensitivity responsively antigens and LCMS
15 based pathologic studies. So these studies, what
16 they gave is that, the vaccine that they're
17 studying, the LMCM minus, or an IV treatment for
18 eight weeks, and then they inoculated with the
19 parasite LST, or excipient and then they did the
20 imaging on the airs and measured these studies of
21 the site by caliper.

22 They did this at 24 hours and 48 hours

1 and then they harvested the ears and did some
2 close up commentary and craft reservoir, and we
3 were able to get our hands on these samples for
4 receiver, for two different studies. One is when
5 we looked at the ears, one of them is when we
6 looked, analyzed neutrophils -- I will talk about
7 those in the next two slides.

8 So the preliminary mouse ear
9 metabolomics data, we were only given so the Slide
10 B over there, we were only given the native and
11 the vaccinated. We don't have the third column
12 here. Over here is the HME plot so, native and
13 vaccinated, and is showing that there's lipid high
14 increases in the vaccinated lipid species. And
15 when we did the metabolomics analysis, we saw a
16 lot of lipids that were changed. And here, what
17 we really need to know here is, the KOH is the
18 inactive mouse with the vaccine for eight weeks at
19 the DSH site. And then, there's the KLB, which is
20 the vaccinated with the buffer. And then there's
21 the KOH, which is the vaccinated. But at the
22 outside site on the ear, what we see, are the two

1 biggest changes in ceramides, C-14 Ceramide and
2 the glycoceramide. And as I said before, these
3 are discoveries processes, and our CBER
4 collaborators are evaluating these further moving
5 forward.

6 Next slide, please. When we looked at
7 the neutrophils, we looked at the control, we
8 looked at the vaccinated, and the resident, and
9 the alien wild trite. And one of the pathways
10 that we actually saw was, at a high level of
11 reactive oxidative species, as metabolites, that
12 are in the oxidative form, so retinoic acid that
13 was, has for OXO, we had a couple of cholesterols
14 that are oxidized form. These are, things that
15 might cause the result of the future fill
16 recruitment. And this is also something that's
17 seen in other disease situations like COVID.

18 Next slide - so I know that everybody's
19 probably heard a lot of stuff about COVID so, I'll
20 be brief here. What our study is, we got day one
21 samples from COVID positive patients. We put
22 these into three different groups, the mild one

1 was one that didn't require hospitalization; a
2 moderate group that was in the hospital, but
3 without the ICU; and a severe patient population
4 that was in the ICU, and these were about 30 per
5 group.

6 And we tried to have age and gender
7 maps. We've done Multiomics on these samples,
8 we've done microRNAs, proteomics, metabolomics and
9 lipidomics. Unfortunately, I got the responses of
10 the groups just literally days before these slides
11 were acquired, so some of the results I've given
12 you are very preliminary here.

13 Next slide - So when we look at the
14 significant changes in the microRNAs and proteins
15 in the day one samples, we can look at the
16 microRNAs, we can do either a P-value of 0.5, or a
17 P-value with an old change of 2.0, or a false
18 discovery rate of 0.5.

19 The MAQC said 20 years ago, when they
20 did the study for transcriptomics, that really the
21 best way to go forward is a P-value with a full
22 change of 2.0, so that's what we're using for

1 microRNAs. When you apply that for the proteins,
2 we see a major reduction going from the P-value
3 because the proteins don't have as much of a fold
4 change as the microRNAs, going forward. So we
5 might have to adjust that going forward, when
6 you're trying to find what might be significant
7 pathways or biomarkers, going forward, and maybe
8 an FBR actually would be more appropriate for
9 them.

10 Next slide, please - so this is actually
11 what you're seeing for the protein that was heard
12 in the table previously, now we're showing it in
13 the panel plot. Here we have on the X-axis, the
14 ratio change in Log 2, then the P-values on the Y-
15 axis, so you can see on the right, that the severe
16 versus mild has most changes, and most of the
17 changes on the protein side are actually
18 increases.

19 Next slide, please - so what you can do
20 with this data is, you can actually put it into
21 IPA, or other types of things and look at
22 pathways, and we've done that.

1 And when we do that for the severe
2 versus mild just using what we would call the
3 significant proteins, which we see is here, are
4 the pathways over here. And if they're in orange,
5 it means that they have the number of changes that
6 were significant, but they're also in the
7 significant direction they would expect for that
8 pathway to be changed.

9 And we want to sing in. One of the
10 biggest pathways that everybody's heard about is
11 this Cytokine pathway, that everybody's heard
12 about for the last 34 years. We also see the
13 wound healing, and we have neutral fuel
14 degeneration. When you look at severe versus
15 moderate, we also still want to see as a cytokine
16 pathway, and we see wound healing is also another
17 major pathway.

18 You can also put these into what I would
19 call networks and see what the correlation of a
20 lot of these things going forward. At the center
21 of all this is IO-6, forwards versus mild. We
22 assume a similar versus moderate, similar patent

1 network, which one stands IO-6 in the middle of
2 everything. But we're actually seeing a couple of
3 negative correlations, shown here in blue.

4 Next slide - which is, more of a
5 standard way of doing, analyzing, data sets, only
6 data sets. This is what I would call these
7 supervised methods by squares, discriminant
8 analysis.

9 And then we have a semi supervised ACA
10 plot on the right here, we can see for the
11 metabolomic data, we can see the severes in the
12 pink, the moderates in the middle in blue and in
13 the mild, green. In this particular data set,
14 we're not just looking at what I would call a
15 nauseous thing. We're actually picking up quite a
16 few of the drugs that people are taking during
17 this stuff, and so that's actually playing a role
18 in what we're seeing in the grouping there.

19 When you look at the ACA plot, we
20 actually put it in order for mild, moderate and
21 severe, and some of the tablets, that we are
22 showing off, here have been previously put out, by

1 other people. Urinary pathway, the tryptophan
2 pathway, what we've been showing here is also, we
3 see a lot of oxidation of fatty acids, and we've
4 seen a lot of proteolysis, amino acids and
5 tripeptides.

6 Next slide, please. If you look at the
7 tryptophan pathway, that's related to severe
8 response, we see the tryptophan is actually down,
9 but many of the actually other metabolites
10 associated, especially in the indol side of it
11 were actually increased. And we also see,
12 downstream from tryptophan is the kynurenine, and
13 it's another metabolite downstream of that were
14 also increased. Next piece, here, these were
15 actually also strongly correlated with creatinine,
16 so previous people would actually report these as,
17 kidney biomarkers, and functional kidney
18 biomarkers.

19 Next slide - One of the things that you
20 can do, and what we try to do is, start looking at
21 cross correlation of the different elements, the
22 data sets that we get. And so, just to see where

1 we might want to look, and other things, and so in
2 this particular case, two ones I want to look at
3 is, the left and the right, sorry, IL-6.

4 Everybody's heard about this being
5 related to Covid. We see that on the top, the
6 highest related things are actually some
7 ceramides. Ceramides are probably actually
8 instigating, sort of starting the IL-6 pathway,
9 and this is a pro inflammatory marker of COVID,
10 that many people have talked about.

11 Over on the left hand side, we have
12 April lipoprotein 84, and this is a lipoprotein
13 that's on the HDL, your good cholesterol, and
14 actually, showed that we have many strong
15 correlations with the lipids, which I would
16 expect, if it affects our cholesterol, so it's a
17 good thing. And it was, actually shown, it was
18 anti correlated with the same ceramides that were
19 actually highly correlated with interleukin. In
20 this particular study, this patient, Sapphire,
21 this was a bunker that was decreased, it didn't
22 hit the FC, 0.50 percent reduction, was actually

1 at 0.57, but it had a very good FDR. It was
2 something that we might go forward with because
3 there was quite a few patients that were in the
4 cardio and hypertension showing signs of color
5 response.

6 Next slide - so the use of Multiomics
7 analysis, kind of healthy service, what we have to
8 figure out is, what are the rules? And so, we had
9 our previous speakers give us some of that, a lot
10 of that was really out of biomarkers. Multiomics
11 can provide biological insights that we can follow
12 up on. And really, the challenges are quality
13 control, integration with multi element data. I
14 acknowledge the provision of system biology to
15 help with all the COVID response and evaluation
16 receiver samples.

17 The Center of Toronto actually gave us
18 the money to evaluate the COVID samples. CBER
19 collaborators provided the samples, and our
20 non-FDA collaborator Heather Smaller at the UTHSC
21 that provided the color samples, thank you.

22 DR. KASLOW: Thank you, Dr. Begeer, next

1 up is Lin Yao, who's the director of Division of
2 Pediatric and Maternal Health in the Office of New
3 Drugs in Cedar. As DPMH Director, Dr. Yao
4 oversees quality initiatives, which promote and
5 necessitate the study of drug and biological
6 products in the pediatric population and improve
7 collection of data to support the safe use of
8 drugs and biologics in pregnant and lactating
9 individuals. She also serves as the rapporteur
10 for the IC he eleven a guideline, pediatric
11 extrapolation and Dr. Yao will review the
12 extrapolation of biomarkers between age groups.

13 DR. YAO: Thanks very much. I'm hoping
14 to, in the next few minutes, describe the utility
15 of biomarkers in a pediatric extrapolation
16 approach. The subtext, or the subtitle of this
17 talk should be, do not forget children.

18 There's my disclosure slide, and here's
19 one of the, I think, most important slides that I
20 can present to you today, may, and that is, as
21 you're thinking about development products to
22 treat or diagnose allergic diseases, that a lot of

1 that population is going to be adult, but some of
2 those patients, almost in every situation, will be
3 children.

4 And therefore, if your development
5 program is going to be focused on adults, but, you
6 know, children are going to end up being exposed
7 to that product, then those product development
8 programs should include pediatric information, and
9 pediatric studies, because, of course, the very
10 first line pediatric patients deserve access to
11 products that have been appropriately evaluated.

12 As you've heard from other speakers, I
13 think Dr. Stein, Dr. Marks, others have described
14 some of the issues related to studies in rare
15 populations. And fortunately for most situations,
16 diseases that occur in adults and children, well,
17 in children, it tends to occur less frequently
18 because children tend to not have a lot of these
19 conditions in as high or great incidence as
20 adults. And so, that's a good thing for children,
21 but it's not necessarily a great thing, if you're
22 trying to develop that product for children.

1 In addition, we have special ethical
2 considerations that require us to think carefully,
3 before we would enroll a pediatric patient in a
4 clinical trial, and in fact, you should have a
5 justification for, why that child should be
6 enrolled, rather than collection of that
7 information, who can provide consent, for example.
8 In an adult trial all of these factors make
9 conduct of clinical trials in children a little
10 bit more complicated.

11 And as part of FDA thinking about how
12 could we develop and label drugs for children in
13 an era where, we couldn't even do a clinical trial
14 in children, came this idea of pediatric
15 extrapolation, and this is what I'm going to talk
16 about.

17 So if you have a disease in a reference
18 population, and generally this is a reference
19 adult population, and that disease occurs in
20 children, if we can establish that the diseases
21 are sufficient to a certain degree, and that that
22 drug you're testing, is also likely going to

1 respond, or in a pediatric patient similarly.
2 Then we may be able to leverage efficacy
3 information, and indeed, safety information for
4 that pediatric population, such that you don't
5 necessarily need to have those adequate and well
6 controlled trials, as Dr. Stein mentioned earlier,
7 to support substantial evidence of efficacy, and
8 to support a risk benefit analysis based on the
9 safety data. So it's a really, important concept
10 in pediatric drug development.

11 We've recently published a guideline, as
12 Dr. Kaslow mentioned, an ICH guideline that's out
13 in draft on the use of pediatric extrapolation,
14 and this figure is from that guideline. I want to
15 take a few minutes to go over it because, I think
16 it's really important to understand conceptually
17 how pediatric extrapolation works, so.

18 As I mentioned, you want to assess the
19 similarity of disease, and the response to
20 treatment between an adult population, and a
21 pediatric population. And to the left, where you
22 see red, when you have very little data, and very

1 little information to support that the diseases
2 are similar, or in fact, you have a lot of data
3 and you know that the diseases are different.

4 Then that plan that you're going to
5 develop, those studies, that you're going to
6 conduct in children, are very likely going to need
7 to be, adequate and well controlled, trial or
8 trials, to get that substantial evidence, but. As
9 we move to the right, as we move to a collection
10 of evidence, and hopefully it's high quality
11 evidence that support that, the diseases between
12 adults and children are similar, and we expect
13 that, response of treatment will be similar
14 between adults and children. Then you could
15 imagine collecting enough information to support
16 an approval in a pediatric population that may
17 rely only on, identifying a dose that matches an
18 exposure that was seen, that supported efficacy in
19 an adult. That's what we call a PK matching
20 approach.

21 This large area that's kind of going
22 from orange to yellow to green, is an area where

1 we've had a lot of evolution in the last few
2 years. So we have some similarities, we have some
3 confidence that the diseases are similar, but we
4 don't know that they're exactly similar. And
5 that's for a lot of conditions in children where,
6 we don't have a lot of information yet to support
7 that, diseases between adults and children are
8 really similar.

9 I'm going to spend a few minutes talking
10 about how biomarkers can be used in that space,
11 and in a pediatric extrapolation approach.

12 So you've heard about Dr. Siegel and Dr.
13 Stein, talk about pharmacodynamic biomarkers. And
14 I think that one important use of a
15 pharmacodynamic biomarker in drug development is
16 that it can indicate that, there's some biologic
17 activity, but we're not necessarily drawing that
18 conclusion that, it's actually a biomarker that
19 will predict an efficacy, or disease outcome. In
20 that case, pharmacodynamic markers can be used, to
21 support that a disease is similar, that a response
22 to treatment is similar between an adult and a

1 pediatric population, it can support dose
2 selection in a pediatric plan. And it can support
3 an actual extrapolation approach in that middle
4 area that I just described, where maybe you can't
5 just match an exposure, but you want to have a
6 little bit more confidence that that drug is
7 working.

8 Similarly, by using a pharmacodynamic
9 marker in addition to matching PK, the bridging
10 biomarker is where I really want to focus our
11 attention on the next few slides.

12 And I'm not going to talk about
13 surrogate endpoint biomarkers at all, because I
14 think that's been discussed really quite
15 thoroughly. A bridging biomarker, and it's
16 defined here, is a response biomarker that is
17 supported by really strong mechanistic evidence,
18 is expected to be correlated with an endpoint that
19 will assess a fields function, survives outcome,
20 but you don't necessarily have enough clinical
21 data to show that, that's a validated surrogate.

22 So this type of bridging biomarker can

1 be used, and has been used in a pediatric
2 extrapolation approach, when we've concluded that
3 there are sufficient similarities between an adult
4 and pediatric population to allow for it to be
5 used.

6 And how do we establish the evidence for
7 that bridging biomarker in a pediatric
8 extrapolation approach? This slide is a little
9 bit busy, but I want to focus your attention on
10 the middle box, that level of evidence for a
11 bridging biomarker, so: 1) It requires that you
12 have established some evidence to support the
13 similarity of disease between an adult and a
14 pediatric population. 2) That in adults you've
15 established efficacy based on a clinical endpoint.
16 3) That in both adult and pediatric settings, that
17 that biomarker captures an effect through a causal
18 pathway.

19 We've heard a lot about the causal
20 pathway by previous speakers, and similarly, as
21 we've heard before that, that biomarker in both
22 adults and children, that that treatment effect

1 goes through the biomarker and is not really,
2 there aren't other effects that are captured by
3 treatment that are not reflected in changes in the
4 biomarker. And then finally, through really
5 rigorous analyses, that the net effect of the
6 exposure, the experimental treatment on the
7 clinical outcome can be explained by changes in
8 that biomarker, so.

9 A lot of, requirements to use the
10 bridging, biomarker, and by the way, I might say
11 that, as you heard, that in translational sciences
12 and the use of such an approach relies on, that
13 you're collecting data in adults during adult
14 development that can help support children.

15 And I'll give you that case example,
16 this is a drug called Sacubitril/Valsartan.
17 Sacubitril is a neprilysin inhibitor, and
18 Valsartan is an angiotensin receptor antagonist.
19 And you can see that, this product, the trade name
20 is Entresto, but it's a combination product and
21 was approved in 2015 for the treatment of heart
22 failure, with reduced ejection fraction.

1 Now, at the time of the adult approval
2 in 2015, we had very little information to support
3 that heart failure in adults was similar to heart
4 failure in children. Most heart failure in adults
5 is ischemic heart disease. Most heart failure in
6 children is really due to congenital heart
7 disease, and so we thought, okay, etiologies are
8 different, the presentation is different, the
9 prognosis and clinical course are different, lots
10 of reasons to say, these conditions are not the
11 same. And therefore, pediatric extrapolation, as
12 an approach to support and approval in the
13 pediatric population was not accepted in 2015.

14 What was required was a double blind,
15 randomized, active, controlled study in pediatric
16 patients with heart failure, based on important
17 clinical endpoints. And you can see the original
18 endpoint was, time to event for death, heart
19 failure, hospitalization, transplant, and other
20 important clinical outcomes, so this was going to
21 be, a trial that we knew was going to be hard to
22 conduct, a time to event trial, in children. It's

1 going to take a long time, it's probably going to
2 take a lot of patients, and there aren't many
3 events that are going to happen. So we knew going
4 out that, this was going to be difficult to
5 conduct, but we didn't feel like that, we had a
6 way scientifically to bridge efficacy in adults to
7 efficacy in children.

8 In the meantime, in 2017, FDA, along
9 with the Centers of Excellence for Regulatory
10 Research and Innovation, CERSI, regulatory science
11 and innovation, CERSI, convened and hosted a
12 workshop that was specifically to ask the
13 question: Are there populations of children with
14 heart failure that are similar to adult patients
15 with heart failure?

16 And through conversations at that
17 meeting, which we had a paper published about this
18 as well, it was determined that there is a subset
19 of heart failure patients in adults that actually
20 are very similar to pediatric patients, and those
21 are adult patients with non ischemic dilated
22 cardiomyopathy. They tend to be, younger they

1 tend to have diseases that are not related to
2 myocardial infarction, or atherosclerotic disease.

3 And so for that reason, we thought,
4 okay, maybe pediatric extrapolation could be
5 considered, if we had a subset of patients with
6 dilated cardiomyopathy not due to ischemic
7 diseases in adults, and compared them to pediatric
8 patients. The problem with the study in
9 Sacubitril/Valsartan was that, most of the
10 patients had ischemic cardiac disease. But there
11 was a subset of patients with dilated
12 cardiomyopathy, they tended to be younger, who
13 could be evaluated.

14 But you see, because the adult trial
15 wasn't powered to look at efficacy in that
16 subgroup, we didn't have a lot of confidence, that
17 you could directly extrapolate and just say, okay,
18 let's look at the PK in those patients, and we'll
19 go ahead and just get PK in pediatric patients.
20 We thought there had to be something more, to
21 bridge the efficacy, and so we looked at NT-ProBNP
22 Prob.

1 Now, this is a very busy slide, and it's
2 really intended for you to take a look at, at your
3 leisure, after the meeting. But NT-ProBNP is
4 short for N-terminal pro brain, natriuretic peptide,
5 and the reason that NT-ProBNP was very interesting
6 as a candidate biomarker to bridge efficacy, it
7 was because we know mechanistically and
8 biologically that, this hormone is secreted by
9 cardiac myocytes in response to stretch, or
10 dilation of the ventricle, that occurs in both
11 children and adults. And if we look at those five
12 criteria that I mentioned before about, how to
13 collect the information to support Probnp as a
14 candidate bridging biomarker, each one of those
15 steps was evaluated and established.

16 Now, I'm not going to go into details,
17 just for the sake of time, but I really want to
18 point out here that, this doesn't happen
19 overnight. There was a lot of information that
20 had to be collected and integrated, both from the
21 clinical trial data in the, adult, paradigm HF
22 trial, as well as, data that were collected in the

1 pediatric heart failure populations, that
2 supported the use of this biomarker. And in fact,
3 the sponsor collected NT-ProBNP, as a biomarker,
4 as part of their phase three trial. So there's a
5 way to directly correlate changes in NT-ProBNP,
6 with changes due to the drug and clinical outcomes
7 in adults.

8 So that's a really critical piece of
9 information that, that's the kind of information
10 that you have to consider collecting, as part of
11 the adult drug development, in order to support
12 potentially an extrapolation approach in children.
13 So what did, we decided, after review of the NT
14 ProBNP data, remember I told you that the endpoint
15 for this trial was an outcome that was death,
16 hospitalization, heart transplant, and we changed
17 it to, changes in ProBNP at 12 weeks.

18 Okay, so a very, very dramatic change in
19 what we were going to accept as establishment of
20 efficacy in children. So a primary, endpoint that
21 was going to be a time to event to a primary
22 endpoint, that we were going to measure at 12

1 weeks, and a change in a biomarker. You can see
2 why we agreed to that change, and again, because
3 it was, correlated to changes in outcome in the
4 adults, and that, that correlation was not just a
5 casual one. In fact, when FDA did, and the
6 sponsor did an analysis of the data from that
7 trial, that over 80 percent of the treatment
8 effect could be explained by changes in that
9 biomarker.

10 Here are the primary efficacy results
11 from the pediatric trial after the endpoint was
12 changed. You can see Entresto, which is the trade
13 name, that the NT-ProBNP from the ratio, from
14 baseline to 12 weeks, was cut in half, compared to
15 the comparator Analypril, which was cut about two
16 thirds. And you can see that, the comparison from
17 Entresto to Analypril, there was about a 15
18 percent improvement, relative to Analypril, in the
19 treated group, so.

20 What were the conclusions by FDA, that
21 the evidence in adults and children, that FDA
22 concluded that, NT-ProBNP could be used as a

1 pharmacodynamic bridging biomarker, to bridge the
2 efficacy from adults, where we had clinical
3 efficacy, clinical, hard clinical endpoints, to
4 children. Where we were not asking for the
5 clinical endpoint anymore, that we used that
6 biomarker to bridge, and that ultimately, when we
7 compared the changes in NT-ProBNP from pediatric
8 patients, to adult patients with dilated
9 cardiomyopathy, those changes were very similar.

10 There are a couple uncertainties that I
11 need to let you know about. That is that, the
12 active comparer that we used in the pediatric
13 trial, Hanalopril is not, approved for use in
14 children. It is standard of care, however, and
15 that reflects sort of, the lag that we have, and
16 the difficulties we have in developing and
17 approving drugs for pediatric heart failure.

18 And I also want to point out, as you
19 might have noticed in the last slide, that the
20 difference between Analopril and the treatment
21 Sacubitril/Valsartan, was not statistically
22 significant. It was in the adult trial.

1 Why was that? We don't know why,
2 because we don't know what, and we didn't know
3 going in, whether Analypril was going to lead to
4 the same changes in NT-ProBNP, as in adults and
5 actually. We weren't as worried about that
6 because, the important comparison was: How did NT
7 Probnp change, between adults and children, not
8 with treatment, with Entresto, as opposed to with
9 treatment with Analypril, but that does remain
10 something that we do need to actively investigate.

11 How do children differ in terms of
12 treatment, with any drug, in heart failure? How
13 do those changes, how they are similar or
14 different to adults?

15 So some final thoughts: We've made a
16 lot of progress in development of treatments for
17 children, based on innovative strategies under the
18 umbrella of the use of pediatric extrapolation and
19 biomarkers, as I've hoped to demonstrate to you,
20 play a very important role in the use of pediatric
21 extrapolation. But there's a very important, but
22 here, and that goes to, what are the assumptions

1 we're using, when we take that leap and say, we
2 can extrapolate.

3 The assumptions have to be that, we have
4 a certain degree of similarity between the adult
5 and pediatric forms of the disease, and that, that
6 similarity has to be assessed very carefully,
7 because if we're wrong, and the diseases are
8 different, then we are absolutely going to approve
9 a drug in children that doesn't work. So the work
10 that has to be done upfront, to support a
11 pediatric extrapolation approach, has to be
12 collection of the data, rigorous analysis that
13 supports similarities between the adult and
14 pediatric population.

15 And then finally, I just want to say
16 that, on behalf of all of my colleagues, we share
17 an important job of increasing the availability of
18 safe, effective and affordable treatments for
19 pediatric patients, including those who suffer
20 allergic diseases. Thank you for your time.

21 DR. KASLOW: Dr. Yao, thank you for
22 your, compelling call to action to ensure, access

1 to drugs in pediatrics, through use of biomarkers,
2 to extrapolate the benefits from adults to
3 pediatric populations.

4 So, last but not least, Dr. Alkis
5 Togias, an allergy immunologist, and chief of the
6 Allergy, Asthma and Airway Biology Branch at the
7 Division of Allergy, Immunology and Transplant,
8 NIAID Support of Biomarker Research in Allergic
9 Disease.

10 DR. TOGIAS: Thank you. Thank you very
11 much to the FDA for this very kind invitation. We
12 are thrilled to see researchers, industry, of
13 course us, and the FDA, getting together to
14 discuss this very important topic. I have the
15 same disclaimer as a government employee, I just
16 put it in a shorter sentence, but it's exactly the
17 same issues.

18 I want to talk about what we, or I,
19 consider as biomarkers of interest in allergy.
20 And once I talk a little bit about that, I'll give
21 you a few examples of what we're trying to do, in
22 terms of attracting research proposals for

1 biomarkers. And then I'm going to go through a
2 few examples of where, I personally think, we have
3 some real gaps, or problems in some of what we use
4 either as biomarkers or as endpoints in some of
5 the trials.

6 But I think it is quite logical that
7 we're looking for good diagnostic biomarkers in
8 allergy, because in allergy, there is this big
9 issue of, when does sensitization to an allergen
10 reflect true disease or not? And that is, a very
11 common problem we deal with. And obviously, these
12 biomarkers would be applied in clinical trials, in
13 epidemiology, but also in clinical practice.

14 We also care about prognostic biomarkers
15 in allergy, because as you know, there is a high
16 chance for a kid with, either recurrent wheezing,
17 or food allergy, to outgrow these problems. And it
18 will be great if we know from the beginning,
19 whether that is going to happen or not.

20 Of course, we care a lot about therapy
21 in the context of therapy in allergy. There is
22 your classic predictive biomarker, which will tell

1 you from the beginning, if you put this particular
2 patient on this treatment, what are the chances
3 that this individual is going to do better on this
4 treatment or not? And this always differs, again,
5 in the world of allergy, based on two concepts,
6 the concept of desensitization, meaning that you
7 are essentially reducing the chance of a reaction,
8 versus the concept of long term tolerance, where
9 you have modified the disease, which is something
10 that theoretically can be done in allergy.

11 And then, we have the question,
12 particularly in allergy and immunotherapy, of can
13 we monitor therapy while it's happening, to
14 predict whether it's going to be effective after a
15 year, or after two years? Because, in
16 immunotherapy we may have to treat for several
17 years, and it would be great if, we know right
18 away once we start it.

19 So here is what we would take, a
20 monitoring biomarker, that can become, a response
21 biomarker, in the middle of the therapy, and use
22 that to predict success. Again, the issue of

1 tolerance comes here as well, because it would be
2 wonderful, even in the middle of therapy, to know
3 that, we have a response biomarker that predicts
4 tolerance. So these are some efforts that we're
5 doing in most of our RFAs these days, that are
6 called NOFOs, or Notice of Funding Opportunity.
7 We have entered elements that have to do with
8 biomarkers.

9 This is our most recent COFAR RFA, and
10 you can see there that, we're asking specifically
11 for studies to accurately assess the incidence and
12 prevalence for epidemiology. We need something
13 more than, just somebody telling us they have food
14 allergy, and studies to improve the diagnosis of
15 food allergy, aiming actually at replacing oral
16 food challenges. It's in our aims, this is
17 another initiative that is on the streets right
18 now, that have to do with vaccine and antibiotic
19 allergy.

20 And again, you can see we are
21 emphasizing the need for research for biomarkers
22 to identify people at risk for reaction, or to

1 confirm reactions to specific antibiotics or
2 vaccines. And this is our omnibus solicitation
3 for SBIR/STTR, and some of you may be very
4 interested in that, in that omnibus solicitation.
5 When it comes to allergy research, we're
6 emphasizing that what we really want is, to fund
7 research for biomarkers as diagnostic markers, or
8 disease severity, and predictive biomarkers for
9 treatment, so.

10 Now why are we really interested? Well,
11 we're interested in the biomarkers a lot because
12 we want to facilitate, of course, like everybody
13 in this room, the development of new therapeutics.
14 But for us, from the perspective of a research
15 institution, we want to make sure we can use those
16 biomarkers to study subgroups, phenotypes,
17 endotypes, that will allow us to understand the
18 disease way better than we do today. And so, we
19 want to use them in clinical trials, we want to
20 use them in observational studies.

21 But there is also something else about
22 biomarker research, and that is that, it can allow

1 us to dig deeper into the mechanisms of disease.
2 So you, on one hand, identify a biomarker with all
3 the uses that we talked about already, but then,
4 at the same time, it unveils all kinds of aspects
5 of disease that we didn't know, and so we have
6 double interest in those biomarkers because of
7 this reason.

8 Now, I'm going to take you through a
9 couple of examples, not to show what we're doing
10 in general, but only to raise some concerns and
11 some discussion, about things we are not sure
12 about. We need more research, classically, in the
13 airway allergy situation, what we use, as you
14 know, to enter patients in a trial, but also in
15 clinical practice, is the combination of symptoms
16 and irrelevant allergic sensitization. That is
17 the gold standard.

18 However, what do we know from
19 epidemiology? We know that percent of the US
20 population is actually, sensitized to at least one
21 aeroallergen. And we also know in the case for
22 allergic rhinitis, that the symptoms of allergic

1 rhinitis are pretty much the same, with slight
2 differences from those of non-allergic disease.
3 And we also know very well that, allergic and non
4 allergic disease probably are superimposed, there
5 is something we call mixed rhinitis, so we have a
6 conundrum here.

7 Do we know for sure that if we choose
8 patients who have symptoms during the ragweed
9 season and the ragweed allergic, that these are
10 patients with allergic rhinitis to ragweed? We
11 certainly don't, I think, and this is an example
12 of one more, observational study we did, with the
13 Inner City Asthma Consortium. We took children
14 with asthma and followed them for an entire year,
15 in terms of symptoms of rhinitis. By the way, 96
16 percent of these children had rhinitis.

17 And you can see then, clustering their
18 symptoms in terms of their seasonal variability,
19 that there are two top clusters. One of them
20 shows a typical spring and fall peak of symptoms
21 of rhinitis, and then the other one, which we
22 really didn't know that it existed, seems to be

1 showing a late fall and winter peak of symptoms.
2 And these are the top two clusters in terms of
3 severity.

4 So we hypothesize that, perhaps they
5 differ, really, in terms of their allergic
6 sensitization, that one of these groups, for
7 example, may be much more allergic to trees and
8 grasses compared to the other, and here's what we
9 find.

10 These two groups absolutely have no
11 difference in terms of sensitization to any tree,
12 to any grass, or to mold. So all of a sudden, we
13 have this reality, which is those clusters, but we
14 cannot necessarily say that, what differs between
15 them is, sensitization to a particular allergen.
16 So that does not matter that, within one of these
17 groups, there are children who do have an allergic
18 problem due to those allergens. But what it does
19 say is that, once you select on the basis on
20 symptoms and sensitization, you may have very well
21 a good number of participants in your study, for
22 whom wear allergy is not relevant.

1 So we do need more diagnostic and
2 predictive biomarkers in the case of allergic
3 rhinitis. And of course, one of the discussions
4 that we all know has been going around for more
5 than a decade, probably a couple of decades, is
6 the story of, whether we should also be using an
7 allergen challenge. And I'm looking at Stefan
8 because he knows that this has been a strong, big
9 discussion in Europe.

10 Here's another problem. Allergen
11 immunotherapy and IgG4, I think that most
12 clinicians will actually say that, IgG4 increase
13 in the course of allergen immunotherapy is an
14 indication that something is happening, and that
15 many people still believe that. There is, a
16 relationship that is causal in that, IgG4 increase
17 does help in the induction of desensitization or
18 tolerance in large immunotherapy.

19 This is, a negative study, that was
20 conducted by the Inner City Asthma Consortium with
21 cockroach subcutaneous immunotherapy, it hasn't
22 been published yet. Ed Zoradi is the principal

1 investigator. What you see is a beautiful effect
2 of SCIT on increasing IgG4, with no effect on
3 placebo, of course, but absolutely no clinical
4 effect.

5 Now, the outcome here, the endpoint
6 here, is a nasal challenge, as opposed to a field
7 type of study. But even here, you can see a big
8 disconnect between IgG4 and symptoms.

9 And you can say, well, why didn't we
10 know about this before? Well, this is a negative
11 study. Most of what we see are, positive studies
12 of allergen immunotherapy, and of course, in
13 positive studies, if you're giving the allergen,
14 and that is the reason why IgG4 gets increased,
15 you're going to see some form of a relationship.
16 Here we have a negative study, and we still see
17 IgG4 going up.

18 Now, in food allergy, one of the issues
19 that we feel needs to be addressed is, the issue
20 of oral food challenge. It is a major advantage
21 that we can do oral food challenges, and that we
22 can actually take medications to approval on the

1 basis, of oral, food challenges. And we use them
2 for diagnosis, we use them for efficacy of
3 therapeutic interventions.

4 But we need to consider that oral food
5 challenges have a list of issues, safety
6 considerations, a personal problem to those
7 parents, and those little kids that are exposed to
8 these foods that they know they may react to, and
9 what it does to their psyche.

10 Time consuming, expensive, partially
11 objective, and still without adequate
12 standardization. Although there is progress in
13 terms of standardizing, but sometimes even the way
14 that, the data are, presented following food
15 challenges, are problematic.

16 This is a comparison of three major
17 studies, two in the New England Journal, one in
18 Lancet showing efficacy of either, epicutaneous
19 immunotherapy, The Epitope Study, or oral
20 immunotherapy, The Palisade Study, and impact that
21 was done by the immune tolerance network. All I
22 want you to look at is the response to placebo,

1 because on one study is 33 percent, in the other
2 studies is less than 10 percent.

3 This is not because of the methodology.
4 It is probably because there are criteria at which
5 a response is, called a response, which are
6 different between these studies. And I'm not
7 raising this to criticize Epitope, I'm raising
8 this to say that, for any reader of these studies,
9 unless they really go deep and think about what is
10 the difference, they will think that there is a
11 problem either in impact or in Epitope, that the
12 response to placebo is what it is. So those are
13 flags for us, that we need more, we need to do
14 more.

15 So the value of a biomarker to replace
16 oral food allergens, or to use in food allergy
17 also has other issues. We need to deal with the
18 type of allergen, so every single different food
19 allergen may actually behave differently.

20 And we need to take that into account,
21 and the age of patient. Dr. Yao raised this issue
22 and we are very, very sensitive to the fact that

1 it's a very different thing to diagnose, or to
2 treat food allergy in infancy, than it is at five
3 years of age. Presence of risk factors already
4 present, those may change the behavior of a
5 biomarker, the stage of diagnosis, is it done
6 before, any exposure to that particular food has
7 happened, versus after years of eating this
8 particular food? And of course, the nature of the
9 therapy.

10 A biomarker may behave actually
11 differently when we're looking at allergen
12 immunotherapy versus, let's say, a microbiome
13 manipulation.

14 Just an example of, behavior of
15 biomarkers in the diagnosis of food allergy, this
16 is Corinne Keats work. And in this analysis, she
17 took infants younger than 12 months of age, and
18 they had not been exposed, they've had risk
19 factors for peanut allergy, but they had not been
20 exposed to peanut. And she identified, of course,
21 a number of them that, even at infancy were
22 already allergic to peanut. And what she's

1 showing is, in her case, that RIH-2 seems to have
2 the strongest accuracy and predictive value for
3 that diagnosis in infancy, in children who had not
4 been exposed before.

5 However, Corrine herself has published
6 another paper a few years ago. When she's looking
7 at five to seven year old children, things are not
8 looking so good for RIH-2. And that's again, the
9 important point, that we need to take age into
10 consideration as we're looking for biomarkers, at
11 least in children.

12 And the other point I wanted to make is
13 that we may want to be looking more carefully at
14 models of biomarkers, as opposed to a single
15 biomarker for diagnosis. And this is an exercise
16 by the Leap Group that looks now, in children who
17 had undergone oral food challenges, what else
18 would be predictive of their response to oral food
19 challenge?

20 In their case, they combined, as you see
21 here, peanut skin testing, RIH-2 antibodies,
22 peanut specific, IgE, IgE to RIH-1, and IgE to

1 RIH-3, and they come up with an AUC in the rock
2 curve, that looks pretty good, despite the fact
3 that sensitivity may be, in my opinion, still an
4 issue, but. It is a concept that, I haven't seen
5 many people pursuing. In my opinion this needs to
6 be, pursued more, it may not be, in other words, a
7 single biomarker. That will give us the answer.

8 So, planning for the future, at least
9 from my perspective, what needs to be done?

10 In the field of allergy, we need two
11 types of studies. We certainly need observational
12 studies, we need large, prospective, longitudinal
13 observational studies, and we are already doing
14 one. Most of you must have heard of our new,
15 birth cohort and the Sunbeam birth cohort, where
16 we will standardize methodologies, standardize
17 clinical evaluations, standardize collection and
18 handling of samples, as one of the previous
19 speakers emphasized.

20 And we would be looking for diagnostic
21 and prognostic biomarkers for susceptibility and
22 risk. And we also have to, then take clinical

1 trials into account. And here we need, as again,
2 it was emphasized, multiple clinical trials, where
3 the same kind of approaches are going to be
4 followed, looking for predictive monitoring,
5 response, diagnostic biomarkers.

6 How can we do all that? Obviously, NIH
7 will do as much as it can. We have a limit of
8 what we can fund, and we will fund whatever we can
9 fund to do this, but it really requires a
10 collaboration between us, and investigators, and
11 the industry. And it needs the input of the FDA,
12 which we are getting, and we want to get more of
13 that, so that this effort is an effort that is
14 with the future in mind.

15 And then there is a need for a platform
16 where these analysis can be done, that is an open,
17 public platform. And what we're really thinking
18 is that in the future, we need to have something
19 like an allergy data commons, where it's not going
20 to be simply a repository of data like we have
21 with import, which, as you know, you can put all
22 your data in there, but it needs to be downloaded.

1 But it will bring out a platform where people can
2 actually analyze these data towards mixing,
3 bringing multiple trials together, and allowing
4 for these biomarkers to be produced and validated.
5 So, thank you for your attention.

6 DR. KASLOW: Thank you, Dr. Togias,
7 actually, come back this way. We're going to have
8 everyone come up, the presenters, to come up to
9 the table here, and I'll start by thanking all of
10 the presenters and inviting them to have a seat up
11 here, and hopefully, we still have Dr. Beger
12 online.

13 What we'll do is, we've got maybe about
14 15 minutes for questions and answers. For those
15 in the room who have questions, please come up to
16 a mic in the middle of the room. Please have a
17 seat, and just state your name and affiliation,
18 and we will also be looking for - thanks, Ron.

19 DR. DRAZEN: Jeff Drazen, from Boston -
20 What I'm taking away from this is that biomarkers
21 are probes into disease causality, where
22 diagnostics are generally syndromic rather than

1 molecular. We don't understand diseases at a
2 molecular level in many cases, heart failure,
3 asthma, hypertension are many examples, and that
4 we, in a way, use biomarkers to give us a more
5 quantitative and precise definition of a disease.
6 And then, therefore, by using biomarkers, we may
7 be able to divide what we have, large disease
8 categories into smaller, more therapeutically
9 approachable diseases.

10 So to some extent, biomarkers are
11 teaching us about biology of disease while we do
12 clinical trials, or while we do observational
13 studies. So how does FDA feel about the
14 identification of biomarkers in quantification of
15 them, so that it can be a standard biomarker?

16 I think Alkis is showing that the
17 various tests for IgE versus skin tests, which
18 actually turned out to be the best. So that when
19 I use a biomarker, I know I'm using the same
20 biomarker that someone else is using, because
21 otherwise we have heterogeneity added to a problem
22 of trying to do disease discovery.

1 DR. KASLOW: Thank you for the question,
2 I think I'll first turn to Dr. Siegel, I'm sorry,
3 Dr. Siegel.

4 DR. SIEGEL: So I think you're raising
5 an important question, which is if you have
6 different assays for a particular biomarker, how
7 do you know that you're measuring the same thing?

8 And this is a difficult question. I
9 think that consortia of academic groups with
10 government and sometimes involvement of industry
11 can be helpful to create standards, for what's
12 being measured in the biomarker qualification
13 program. We qualify biomarkers, and we don't
14 qualify a particular assay.

15 So if you think about high sensitivity
16 CRP, we don't qualify one particular assay for
17 high sensitivity CRP, we use measurement of one
18 assay for the qualification, and then that
19 biomarker is what's qualified. Someone who wants
20 to use a different assay to measure the same
21 thing, needs to show that what they're measuring
22 is the same thing that's being measured by the one

1 that was used for the qualification.

2 So when we qualify, we put the
3 information that was used to qualify the
4 biomarker, on our public website, and the
5 specifications that would be part of that
6 qualification would be publicly available. And
7 others, who want to develop a new assay, would
8 want to mirror those specifications to make sure
9 they're measuring the same thing. I know your
10 question was quite broad and that I was just
11 answering one part. Did I at least go part of the
12 way to answering your question?

13 DR. DRAZIN: Most of it, but just the
14 National Bureau of Standards provides standards
15 for things. Is there an equivalent for standards
16 for biomarkers?

17 DR. SIEGEL: It would not be in my
18 group, we work collaboratively with NCTR and other
19 groups, and there are standards for, certain
20 things, but I can't say there's a single place
21 where there are standards set for biomarkers.

22 DR. KASLOW: Actually, before that, any

1 comments from Europe on that question?

2 DR. VIETHS: Maybe to the question of,
3 having standards for it? When you do these
4 companion diagnostics exercise you have to do, to
5 show you're not forced to use one commercial test
6 in Europe, you can use whatever you want, and then
7 if somebody wants to address the same marker, you
8 have to qualify, that your test has the same
9 performance as the other test. And so, this is a
10 kind of standardization of the approach, which I
11 think is quite important in the biomarkers field.

12 DR. KASLOW: Maybe turning to you, Dr.
13 Beger, in terms of reference standards, and your
14 thoughts that may be related to that quality
15 control.

16 DR. BEGER: Yeah, I mean, you can
17 purchase for a lot of lipids, a lot of
18 metabolic(?) labels, but proteins are a little bit
19 more difficult. And obviously, you can generate
20 other ones for the other omens, but there are a
21 lot of ones that it's very difficult to get
22 standards for. That was a very valid question.

1 Will you do that please?

2 DR. SIEGEL: I think there may be one
3 other way to answer the question that may be
4 helpful. So what we qualify in the biomarker
5 qualification program are, use of biomarkers in
6 drug development programs.

7 There's a separate way to get approval
8 of biomarkers as in vitro diagnostics through the
9 Center for Devices. So they would qualify a
10 particular in vitro diagnostic test, for a
11 particular use, and then, other tests that want to
12 be used, would have to be cleared based on having
13 similar specifications to the initial one that was
14 cleared. So in that case, when it's a device
15 that's been cleared by the Center for Devices,
16 there's a clear pathway to showing equivalence
17 between one test and another one. Hope that's
18 helpful.

19 DR. KRISHNAN: Gary Krishnan Eli Lilly
20 so, from a sponsor standpoint, more and more, we
21 realize that the information around how a drug
22 responds, or doesn't respond in a disease is

1 really embedded in the target tissue. And rarely
2 do we see that signal show up in more accessible
3 samples like serum or urine, et cetera. And the
4 question to the panel is: What is the burden of
5 evidence that one needs to generate?

6 Because a lot of these are ideated in
7 the clinic as we progress through phase two, and
8 by the time we refine what to measure, and why we
9 should measure, the train has left the station of
10 phase three. So can the panel opine on
11 retrospective evaluation? What is the burden of
12 evidence, how do we overcome this latency? That's
13 perhaps inherent in how we discover and develop.

14 DR. KASLOW: Dr. Siegel?

15 DR. SIEGEL: So I think it all depends
16 on the type of biomarker. Obviously, surrogate
17 endpoint biomarkers require much higher level of
18 evidence than a prognostic biomarker, or a
19 diagnostic biomarker.

20 I think it is important to recognize
21 that when you assess a data set for the
22 performance of a biomarker, you need to verify

1 that, in an independent data set, to have
2 confidence that the hypothesis is borne out. So
3 if you can work into your clinical development
4 program, that process of hypothesis generation and
5 then hypothesis testing in a separate data set,
6 that can be very helpful for those purposes.

7 DR. KRISHNAN: I think you're right.
8 And the challenge for us is pre-specifying, having
9 enough time to analyze the data in phase two, in a
10 real world situation, and then pre-specifying it
11 in phase three.

12 DR. KASLOW: Great, thank you, for your
13 question, it sounds actually that question had, I
14 think, two parts. One was a temporal part, but I
15 thought I heard another part of that question
16 being a compartment problem, which is, we have
17 limited compartments that we can sample, like the
18 blood, but oftentimes the action is, someplace
19 else, and so, any thoughts on that?

20 DR. TOGIAS: Yes, please. I think this
21 is a very important question, and we haven't
22 figured it out in allergy, but again, in allergy,

1 we do have tissues that are accessible quite
2 easily beyond blood and urine, for respiratory
3 allergy, especially for allergic rhinitis, the
4 nose is very accessible.

5 And through the Inner City Asthma
6 Consortium, and there will be a speaker discussing
7 this, we have established, essentially almost an
8 invariable use of either nasal swabs or nasal
9 lavage to continuously measure biomarkers there in
10 transcriptomics or other omics, that will help us
11 go up to the tissue, and. I think Dr. Altman will
12 discuss how that doesn't necessarily agree with
13 what we see in the blood or in the skin.

14 Another methodology, simple methodology,
15 has also been devised in, atopic dermatitis with
16 the skin tape strips, a very interesting
17 methodology where you can certainly assess a lot
18 of functionality and structural aspects of the
19 skin, with a very, non-invasive way.

20 So those are techniques that I think
21 should start being used, even if they're not at
22 this point validated as true biomarkers, but

1 should start being used in clinical trials just to
2 see what we can get out of them.

3 DR. KASLOW: Okay, so there was just one
4 question from Dr. Rabin, just one second, Ron. I
5 think one of the things that I want to emphasize,
6 I think Dr. Stein and others have sort of implied
7 or explicitly described, is to know translational
8 medicine.

9 We've sort of grown up with the idea
10 that it's benched to bedside and it moves in one
11 direction, right. That you have a hypothesis and
12 you look at some of these in vitro, most of those
13 are biomarkers. You look at mechanisms and then
14 you say, okay, well, I think I have enough, I'm
15 going to move into the clinic, and it's going to
16 be clinical from then on.

17 But I think what we're saying with
18 biomarker utility in drug development is that it
19 doesn't always move in that direction. If we can
20 collect as much information as we can, on those
21 biomarkers you use, to sort of jump to the bedside
22 and keep evaluating those biomarkers, and others

1 all along in clinical development. I think to
2 that one questioner's point that, you may create
3 that sort of evidence that can support at the time
4 you're doing that clinical trial, if you've
5 followed those biomarkers all the way along, it
6 can give you a lot of information.

7 So I think the idea is that,
8 translational medicine isn't necessarily all just
9 one way anymore, that it's kind of got to move
10 back and forth, to ultimately make the most use of
11 the data that you're collecting in a development
12 program.

13 DR. KASLOW: Dr. Siegel?

14 DR. SIEGEL: And then we'll go to Dr.
15 Rabin, and I'd like to make a plug for substudies.
16 We all like to find the most convenient source of
17 samples so we can study lots of people, which is
18 usually blood. But recently I've heard several
19 examples where biomarkers in the CSF aren't
20 reflected in the blood. And the AMP study of
21 rheumatoid arthritis found a lot of very
22 insightful findings by synovial biopsy of the

1 joint, and none of that was reflected in the
2 blood. So if you can incorporate a small substudy
3 with more intensive sample collection and a
4 biomarker study as part of the larger study, that
5 can be a very helpful way to get some important
6 scientific insights.

7 DR. KASLOW: Okay, we have now two
8 questions, virtually, one for Dr. Yao.

9 Is there an FDA age definition for
10 children? At what age is a person considered an
11 adult in the context of clinical studies? And is
12 there an age definition for transition from
13 newborns to children?

14 DR. YAO: Yes, so I'll direct you to a
15 guidance that's been published out for a while
16 now. It's called: The ICH-11 R-1, which is an
17 ICH guideline that describes basic rules and
18 concepts related to pediatric therapeutics
19 development. There, we provide very explicit sort
20 of age cut offs for what's considered a neonate,
21 what's considered an infant, a child, adolescent,
22 et cetera.

1 Now, I will say that, regulatory
2 definitions differ, even within FDA, so if you
3 look at CDRH, the Center for Devices, their cutoff
4 for child to adult is 21, for CBER and CDER, we
5 consider the cutoff to be 17.

6 And my point in bringing that up is
7 that, regardless of what regulatory definition you
8 see or you reference, the point is,
9 scientifically, we want you to base your
10 development programs on the populations that, make
11 know age is actually a biomarker, too, and I would
12 argue, a very poor biomarker in most cases. So we
13 really want you to think scientifically, about
14 what age groups you really need to be studying, or
15 apply, as opposed to just. Well, FDA says a child
16 is two, so we'll, just study down to two.

17 DR. RABIN: Okay, thank you, and the
18 last question before the break, then.

19 Has the FDA become aware of biomarkers
20 that are not intended to be used in drug
21 development, but rather commercially, such as
22 genetic screening services? If so, would these

1 products be subject to the same regulatory
2 requirements? Anybody, want to take that?

3 DR. SIEGEL: Yes. So the question has
4 to do with biomarkers that are not intended for
5 use in drug development programs.

6 DR. RABIN: Yes.

7 DR. SIEGEL: I guess what the questioner
8 is saying is, if something pops up on 23-and-me
9 what would the FDA do with that information? I
10 think that's kind of where the question is coming
11 from, not sure.

12 DR. RABIN: We'll deal with it when it
13 happens, I guess.

14 DR. SIEGEL: Yeah, you can ask me. This
15 one's not going, why don't you go ahead? I guess
16 I don't completely understand what the question
17 is, so: What would the FDA do if a biomarker pops
18 up on 23-and-me?

19 DR. KASLOW: I mean, I guess it really
20 depends on the context of use. How are you going
21 to use that information, and what medical
22 intervention or action are you going to take based

1 on that information? So I think it's the usual.
2 It depends on what the context of use is.

3 DR. VOLLMERS: Well, thank you for
4 saying that, because that's exactly where I'm
5 going, so. Thomas Vollmers, allergist in the Food
6 Allergy Biomarker Alliance.

7 What I want you to speak more on is,
8 really context of use, in the context of food
9 allergy in a surrogate biomarker, and which
10 clinical trial designs are going to provide the
11 most evidence, to get to a surrogate endpoint? And
12 keep in mind, context of use, does that make
13 sense?

14 DR. SIEGEL: So the question is: What
15 clinical trial design would be most helpful to get
16 the evidence to validate a biomarker as a
17 surrogate, endpoint biomarker in food allergy?

18 In food allergy, I would give a general
19 answer for any therapeutic area, and you could
20 apply this to food allergy. It would have to be a
21 therapeutic study, where you see an impact of the
22 therapeutic intervention on the biomarker, and

1 you're also, collecting evidence on later clinical
2 outcomes.

3 And if you see a very strong correlation
4 between the therapeutic intervention and the
5 clinical outcome, that's evidence to support that
6 the biomarker can be used as a surrogate. If you
7 then see that, in a variety of different
8 therapeutic trials, with different classes of
9 drugs, where the change in the biomarker
10 corresponds to a certain change in the clinical
11 outcome, and that relationship is preserved across
12 drug classes, that would be very strong evidence
13 to support.

14 DR. VOLLMERS: Thank you.

15 DR. KASLOW: Just highlight that point
16 that came up multiple times, I think with Dr. Yao,
17 Dr. Stein, and others.

18 What are the underlying assumptions
19 you're making in those studies, as it relates to
20 mechanism, populations, et cetera, et cetera? So,
21 really understanding, what are you assuming as
22 you're designing those clinical trials? One last

1 question is that, yes, one last question.

2 DR. VON MUTIUS: Erika Von Mutius from
3 Munich in Germany, I'm a pediatrician, and. If
4 you would consider running a study where you want
5 to identify the biomarkers, and you want to have
6 multiple evidence, like you have mechanistic
7 studies, normally analogy, this would be mouse
8 studies, and you would have clinical studies, or
9 epidemiological observations.

10 What I've always been puzzled about is
11 the mouse models. There are so many ways of,
12 having mouse models. Is there any standard that
13 the FDA or the IMA would like to see? Is it about
14 haste mite? Is it about cockroach? Is it about
15 Alternaria? Is it an acute model? Is it a
16 chronic model?

17 I mean, there's so many of these, is
18 there any sort of standardization in that way?
19 That because, we know that these models do not
20 necessarily reflect what we see in epidemiology,
21 or what we see in clinics, I'd like to sort of get
22 your feeling.

1 DR. KASLOW: Do you want to take that
2 one first?

3 DR. VIETHS: This is a new battlefield.
4 I think, in general, the models are useful for a
5 certain purpose, I would say. And so, it's very
6 difficult to draw general conclusions from a very
7 specifically designed, animal model, to
8 extrapolate to humans. So we would look at it in
9 a very specific way, we would think they are,
10 mostly hypothesis generating, especially in the
11 field of biomarkers, and then, you have to
12 validate your hypotheses.

13 DR. KASLOW: Dr. Siegel?

14 DR. SIEGEL: So the question of, how
15 animal models support use of biomarkers in humans
16 is one that comes up very commonly, across many
17 therapeutic areas.

18 Again, going back to the symposium, from
19 the accelerating medicines program, a couple of
20 weeks ago, from the foundation of the NIH, they
21 spoke about studies of lupus and rheumatoid
22 arthritis in humans, and. Found that the

1 mechanisms that were driving disease, were quite
2 different than, what had been seen in animal
3 models.

4 So those would be situations where the
5 animal models actually did not offer useful
6 insights for the human. But there are other
7 situations where, animal models mirror the human
8 disease very closely.

9 So I think that, you would want to put
10 together a dossier of evidence, indicating that
11 the manifestations of the disease in the animal
12 are similar to in the human. The interventions
13 that impact the human impact the animal in a
14 similar way, and other biomarkers that behave a
15 certain way in the human, behave a similar way in
16 animals. That's a tall order, and often you won't
17 see that.

18 Another way to look at animal models is
19 they may be a way of assessing one particular
20 aspect of the pathophysiology, but may not be
21 relevant to the whole disease in humans. Hope
22 that's helpful.

1 DR. KASLOW: Dr. Togias, you want to say
2 anything on animal models, from NIID perspective?

3 DR. TOGIAS: No, nothing to add, I mean.
4 I really see a two- way approach to animal models.
5 On one hand, they do give us hints about
6 mechanisms and ideas about biomarkers. And many
7 times when you do the research in humans, you will
8 get a lot of ideas that in order to get to the
9 bottom of them, you're going to have to bring them
10 back to an animal model, and then look at what
11 exactly the observation in humans means.

12 DR. KASLOW: Great. Okay, I think we
13 should probably leave it at that. Thank you all,
14 and thanks again for your presentations.

15 DR. HERSHEY: Our first speaker is Dr.
16 Arshad from the Isle of White Study, Southampton
17 UK. Good to see you, again, wonderful study
18 looking at the natural history and risk factors
19 for the development of allergic disease. So we're
20 really happy to have him kick off this session.
21 Thank you.

22 as

1 DR. ARSHAD: Thank you, for the kind
2 introduction, and the FDA organizing committee,
3 for inviting me, to participate in this symposium,
4 and I'm so sorry that I couldn't travel.

5 I got a moderately severe claim. I felt
6 better not share that, so my task today is, to
7 discuss the current clinical endpoints for
8 efficacy and I'll try to summarize those.

9 Next slide, yes, I looked at the
10 biomarker endpoints and another two resources from
11 the FDA, and these are the categories of the
12 biomarkers that are listed, and try to put the
13 asthma related outcomes onto that.

14 Next slide, next hit, next hit. If
15 these are the kind of clinical endpoints of
16 biomarkers that, we use in different categories
17 within the book, I notice that there are sorts of
18 examples of different diseases, and biomarkers
19 that are enumerated to show, how these biomarkers
20 can be used in clinical trial, and. I searched
21 for asthma and LSD, and didn't find even one
22 example, where asthma and LRD was listed.

1 And, I suppose, that shows that we do
2 not have the best markers that can qualify, and
3 that's why we are here, to discuss more research
4 is needed, and as we previously called so.

5 Next slide is just another example of
6 what happens, when we don't have good biomarkers
7 that reflect the disease activity. This was just
8 copy and pasted from, protocol from a pharma
9 company that contacted me last month for a
10 biological treatment to be tested in asthma, and
11 primary marker is analyzed as magnetization rate,
12 and we'll come back to that, but.

13 There are 18 secondary endpoints listed,
14 trying to cover all the aspects of asthma, partly
15 reflecting asthma and the heterogeneous condition,
16 but also indicating that, we don't have one or two
17 markers, that can capture all the disease
18 activity, or the endpoint.

19 Next slide. So there are markers for
20 the diagnosis that would be used. If we are
21 trying to prevent asthma, the aim is to treat, or
22 manage asthma, with a new drug. We will be

1 wanting, to have markers, which reflect asthma
2 control.

3 Next. The asthma control is generally
4 gauged in two domains, one as a current asthma
5 control, which would be symptoms or reduction in
6 medication, and the next, which is equally
7 important, is for any drug, which can reduce the
8 future risk of adverse outcome, exacerbation, or
9 future loss of lung function.

10 Next slide. Broadly, we can divide
11 biomarkers that we use in asthma in, those which
12 are objective and are reproducible, but. They may
13 not be so relevant to the patient, and they may
14 include lung function, for instance, which is
15 widely used, easily done, but it is relatively
16 insensitive. Especially for instance, pillow that
17 has been used previously, it's not been found to
18 be sensitive to various interventions. Airway
19 responsiveness is most sensitive, but generally
20 requires, more procedural sort of time and
21 resources, and tend to have a weak correlation
22 with many other asthma features.

1 Allergy, bone shape provocation test is
2 very specific, because it's an experimental model,
3 and mimics features of allergic asthma. But
4 again, previously, about 20 years ago, this was
5 used frequently at the early stages of drug
6 development in asthma, but it was found that,
7 those drugs which were found to have an effect in
8 the allergen provocation model, did not then
9 succeed, when they were biased with the exposure,
10 so this model is much less commonly used now.

11 Next slide, so there are other patient
12 relevant outcomes, which are increasingly more
13 popular and used because they reflect what patient
14 is experiencing. They are in three categories of
15 symptoms, or the Q medication use, which is easy
16 to gather information, but they are subjective
17 and.

18 One of the problems is that, for
19 symptoms, the definitions vary widely, and rescue
20 medication use changes depending on individuals.
21 The other is the corticosteroid reduction, which
22 is often used. It's a desirable outcome for any

1 new drug that can be found useful for, asthma
2 associated with various asthma effects. And the
3 third, which is more commonly used now is
4 exacerbation, partly because it is very closely
5 related to the patient's well being, and long term
6 health, but also it has implications on healthcare
7 resources. One of the issues with exacerbation,
8 as an outcome is that, used in different trials,
9 in various definitions, including the number of
10 exacerbation, number of patients with at least one
11 exacerbation time to first exacerbation, or
12 annualized penetration rate, and. The other issue
13 is that, it might not happen in a shorter duration
14 trial, because it may be not very frequent.

15 Next slide, the asthma quality of life
16 is, assessed in many trials, partly because it is
17 very relevant to the patient. This graph showing
18 a combination inhaler, improving patient's quality
19 of life, it's often used as a secondary outcome.

20 Next slide, there are various (in the
21 next slide) a number of other instruments are
22 available which provide very similar information.

1 Next slide, so as none of the individual
2 outcomes that we have discussed are ideal, because
3 they have advantages, but also some drawbacks, in
4 recent trials, composite outcomes have become more
5 popular. The rationale is that, these composite
6 outcomes have more than one, different aspect of
7 asthma features being assessed.

8 Secondly, most of these give a numerical
9 score, so. Asthma controlled tests, and since it
10 includes the symptoms, and medication, asthma
11 controlled questionnaires, when you add, the lung
12 function into that assessment, cells and, the last
13 two compacts, and test, include not only the
14 symptoms, medication, lung function, but also
15 include a number of exacerbation. And that has
16 the advantage that, if the exercise did not happen
17 to the degree where, it can be assessed in the two
18 arms of a drug trial, there are other outcomes
19 that can be combined to give invasion of
20 indefinite.

21 Next slide. This is a recent
22 publication in ERJ last year from one of my

1 colleagues in Southampton, where they put together
2 five domains of asthma: Clinical life, clinical
3 outcomes, exacerbation use, corticosteroid, and
4 asthma control, into a measurable instrument, to
5 assess response to biological therapy, and this is
6 developed separately for adults.

7 Next slide, a similar outcome has been,
8 suggested for children.

9 Next slide, so I think this has been,
10 previously shown that a good biomarker, or a
11 perfect biomarker, if you like, should be easily
12 measurable. It should have some partial link to
13 the mechanism, it should be reliable, and
14 reproducible, provide information about the
15 disease prognosis and clinical outcomes, and be,
16 cost effective.

17 Next slide, so this is borrowed from the
18 Yaki Physician Paper, where they enlisted
19 endotypes of asthma, and we understand and link it
20 to the treatment, or type of treatment to be
21 tested, as a relevant biomarker, and that has been
22 used in the trials for these medications. For

1 instance, eosinophil in either in the blood or
2 sputum

3 for asthma therapy, or IgE for
4 olimizumab.

5 Next slide, so one of the issues with
6 asthma as we understand it, is that it's not easy
7 to characterize asthma into all the endotypes that
8 we discussed, or shown in previous slides. And
9 most commonly, a more practical way to endotype
10 asthma is, to divide it into classified, into T2
11 and non-T2 asthma.

12 For T2 asthma phenotype, nitric oxide is
13 often used as efficacy marker, and this recent
14 paper showed that, it can be also used as a
15 prognostic marker in T2 asthma.

16 Next slide, the recent paper again, also
17 suggested that periostin may be a marker for T2
18 asthma. When they put together the data for
19 periostin, compared to the FeNo blood use results
20 in IgE, they show that the specific sensitivity is
21 better than other markers, so this can be a
22 candidate to be used, although it is harder to

1 measure.

2 Next slide, so as I said, for T2 asthma
3 ESNFL is commonly used. It predicts response to
4 Anti IL-5 therapy and one of the problems is that,
5 as methyl can be raised in other conditions, and
6 it's not specific for inflammation, and same is
7 the case for phenol actually, that it is
8 influenced by various other factors, but the
9 advantage being that it is safe, and fast, and
10 easy to measure.

11 IgE is also easy to measure, and has
12 been, used but the cutoffs used are arbitrary, and
13 have not, been validated. There are, other,
14 potential markers, that have been proposed in the
15 literature.

16 Exhale breath contains a very large
17 number of molecules, which have been, put together
18 in various publications. One called, Electronic
19 nose, or in a different pattern, but by and large,
20 this hasn't been found popular in the trials,
21 because of the inconsistent results period we
22 talked about for non-T2 markers, we do not have

1 good validated markers.

2 Neutrophils from the biology of the
3 non-T2 asthma and some of the other cytosines,
4 have been possessed, but they have not been
5 validated. So that's where personal research is,
6 so just also to point out that, when collecting
7 the clinical endpoint, one needs to remember that.
8 What is the type of treatment that is being,
9 tested?

10 So for instance, the bronchodilator
11 trial, lung function is very reasonable to be
12 clinically the endpoint, but for a controller
13 treatment, such as anti-IL5 therapy, exacerbation
14 will be most appropriate. One for safety
15 assessment, when the plasma cortisol would be good
16 if the drug contains therapy.

17 Next slide. Another thing to remember
18 is the time it takes, for the clinical efficacy
19 outcome to be apparent. So for instance, symptoms
20 and lung function might change with a drug trial
21 within few weeks, and clinical trial duration,
22 which is for two to three months, cannot have an

1 area responsiveness, which takes months to
2 improve.

3 Next slide. So this is just as an
4 example of what happens with different affected
5 endpoints using the same intervention.

6 And this is a trial from about 20 years
7 ago, by Woodcock in North England, where they used
8 a mite impermeable bed covers in the primary care,
9 and

10 mild to moderate asthmatic in a
11 randomized control trial. The efficacy endpoint
12 in this trial was, peak flow variation and changes
13 in asthma medication and.

14 Next slide. No significant difference,
15 you can see, was seen, but a more recent trial
16 using the same intervention, that is the, mite-
17 impermeable bed covers which was against for years
18 duration, than the mite cover trial, but on this
19 occasion the efficacy endpoint was, exercise and
20 emergency department visit.

21 There seems to be a significant
22 difference. Now these two trials had been done

1 differently, so it's not necessarily that, only
2 the outcome difference made a difference, from
3 non- significant to a significant trial.

4 Particularly the second trial was, done
5 in children, but. This could be an example of
6 where one needs to be very careful about selecting
7 the outcome, which suits the intervention, so.

8 Now just touching on the efficacy
9 endpoint for primary prevention, because when
10 you're trying to prevent asthma, the endpoint is,
11 asthma diagnosis in the two groups, so pediatric
12 asthma diagnosis is challenging anyway, especially
13 in early childhood. The question is

14 Bronchodilator is generally, suggested
15 in various guidelines, with the addition of FeNO
16 in the UK Guideline, but not in China. But by and
17 large, in epidemiological studies, include a very
18 large number of different definitions, that have
19 been used because of the lack of the consensus.

20 This is the recent paper, which
21 suggested that 53 different definitions were, used
22 and that makes the problem. Asthma selecting

1 rather, got a clear outcome in asthma prevention
2 of asthma so much more challenging.

3 Next slide, again trial was to show what
4 happened. So this was a GAP trial, very well
5 known in the asthma allergy world, where those who
6 have grass pollen allergic bronchitis were given
7 grass pollen immunotherapy in order to prevent the
8 development of asthma, which is generally, these
9 children have a very high risk.

10 The primary endpoint was, to prevent
11 asthma, diagnose a symptom and a change in FEV
12 more than 12 percent, and the trial fails to
13 achieve that, which is disappointing. Given that
14 the cost of analysis, when they did, to see what
15 happens with all the individual components of
16 asthma symptoms, medication use, and combined
17 symptoms and medication use, as well as lung
18 function were, all better in the intervention.
19 There was certainly a sort of clinical indicator
20 that, the allergoid therapy reduced, or did
21 something in these children, where they had less
22 symptoms, and did not require medication for

1 asthma for the clinical endpoint.

2 Another issue with the primary
3 prevention trial is the duration, so often primary
4 prevention is kind of agreed. It is generally
5 agreed that, that needs to be implemented, or at
6 least, it started very early in life, maybe in the
7 infancy, or toddler age group, but. Asthma
8 diagnosis cannot be, done until later in the
9 childhood, which makes the trial very long, so we
10 need some surrogate marker in between, which can
11 be, assessed to indicate which children will
12 develop asthma later in childhood.

13 And one of the exercises we did recently
14 was to combine the large UK cohorts of about 7,000
15 children, and looked at various combinations of
16 risk factors to see, what can predict asthma leak,
17 in not only childhood but also up to the young
18 adult life, and. After the serious modeling, we
19 came up with the element of utilization, plus
20 frequent B's, which you call Atopic frequency at
21 the age of three to four.

22 Work, which will very strongly, indicate

1 those children who will develop asthma in the
2 later childhood. Vaccine is possibly, used as
3 surrogate marker and we show that, nearly 25
4 percent of these children who have ERW will
5 develop asthma with area, become so.

6 Just to summarize, asthma control
7 includes two components, level of clinical control
8 by features such as, symptom control, and
9 personally, and the risk of exacerbation, or
10 future loss of control. And any biomarker or
11 combination of biomarkers, should try to assess,
12 or include both of these domains, and the neurons,
13 and various numerous composites exposed, that have
14 been used, especially compact in a set try, to
15 cover both these aspects.

16 We need to also, remember that, asthma
17 is a variable condition, so it is preferable to
18 assess any marker, or biomarker, or efficacy
19 endpoint, not just at the beginning and end, but
20 also at multiple time points, during this trial
21 duration. We don't have, a good objective
22 efficacy marker, they're not that precise, and

1 there is a huge need for research in this area,
2 which is, when selecting the efficacy endpoint to
3 consider endotype of asthma, the type of therapy,
4 and the duration of the trial. That can make a
5 difference in the success and failure, and pro
6 primary prevention needs, certainly need therapy
7 months, thank you.

8 Next slide, the next slide, that's the
9 end of my talk. Thank you.

10 DR. HERSHEY: Thank you. Similar to the
11 previous session, the question and answer panel
12 will happen at the end of this session, so I'm
13 going to go ahead and introduce our next speaker,
14 Dr. Sally Wenzel.

15 Dr. Wenzel chairs the Department of
16 Environmental and Occupational Health at the
17 University of Pittsburgh, and the title of her
18 presentation is: Biomarkers and asthma endotypes.

19 DR. WENZEL: Thank you, Nero, and thank
20 you to the organizers for the opportunity to
21 present today. I really enjoyed the morning so
22 far and I think it's been very provocative.

1 I was wondering in advance, all right,
2 so I was given the topic of biomarkers and
3 endotypes, and I think we're not quite to
4 endotypes yet, so I'll give you some of my
5 explanations.

6 In 2024, I think we're moving from
7 molecular phenotypes to endotypes. Asthma has
8 made a lot of progress over the last 15 to 20
9 years, looking at clinical characteristics,
10 looking at molecular characteristics, and really,
11 I think, starting to come up with molecular
12 phenotypes, as opposed to just clinical
13 phenotypes. But over the next several years, I
14 think we need to continue to incorporate responses
15 to specific targeted therapies, the biologics that
16 are available to us, and really define the
17 pathways that define endotypes.

18 So at least from my perspective, and a
19 few other people, defining an endotype means
20 actually discovering and treating the causative
21 pathway of a disease that, when you modify that
22 pathway, you substantially improve and maybe even

1 cure that specific disease, or endotype, so we're
2 not yet to endotypes.

3 We think of asthma as an umbrella. It's
4 got a lot of different heterogeneous clinical
5 symptoms, exacerbations, lung function changes,
6 and I think, at least in 2024, we can certainly
7 define it by Type-2, the presence of Type-2
8 inflammation, or the absence, or at least low
9 amounts of Type-

10 Inflammation, and. Type-2 inflammation
11 of course, alludes to the activation of cytokines
12 IL 45 and 13, which we now can generally identify
13 using reasonable biomarkers, eosinophils and
14 exhaled nitric oxide. When we think about that,
15 low or no Type-2 inflammation, we really don't
16 have any biomarkers for that, it's really the
17 absence of the Type-2 biomarkers.

18 Now, I said these are general
19 biomarkers, and I really do mean these are general
20 biomarkers. This is an example of why, I think
21 they're quite general.

22 This is a study that we did now, 10

1 years ago, looking at epithelial brushings, and
2 looking at gene expression in the epithelial
3 brushing, and relating it to exhaled nitric oxide.
4 And so, we took actually the top 500 genes that
5 were related to exhaled nitric oxide, and then
6 clustered them, and.

7 In this, checkerboard that you see up
8 here, every column, is a patient, every row, is a
9 gene. I think what you can see is that, the
10 patterns are really quite different. In those, of
11 course, we had two clusters that appeared that had
12 very low levels of exhaled nitric oxide, you can
13 see those green highlighted areas, and you can see
14 that the gene expression patterns in them are
15 really quite different.

16 But, in addition, we had three different
17 groups that all expressed very high levels of
18 exhaled nitric oxide. The last one was really,
19 probably what we would consider the most typical
20 for asthma. As we were taught when we were in
21 medical school, these were young people, highly
22 allergic, 50 percent African-American, et cetera,

1 but then, there were also two other clusters that
2 had equally high exhaled nitric oxide levels,
3 where the gene expression pattern was, totally
4 different.

5 I think, this really emphasizes that
6 despite a similar biomarker, what's driving it,
7 and that maybe, even the responses to it, can be
8 dramatically different.

9 When I think about our current asthma
10 biomarkers, I am clustering them into Type-2
11 molecular biomarkers, and of those, I've listed,
12 sputum eosinophils, blood eosinophils fraction,
13 exhaled nitric oxide, and a combination of exhaled
14 nitric oxide and blood eosinophils. Then I'm
15 listing IL-6 as another biomarker, but I'm not
16 really categorizing it as T-2 or non T-2, I'm
17 classifying it as a separate biomarker, in and of
18 itself, so. I think sputum eosinophilia was
19 perhaps the first, true asthma biomarker.

20 Certainly we've had atop skin
21 sensitivity, but I think those are better
22 biomarkers for allergy, as opposed to asthma, so I

1 think sputum eosinophilia was really the first,
2 true asthma biomarker, we know that it's
3 predictive of the efficacy of inhaled
4 corticosteroids. There have been several studies
5 that have been, published on that, as well as the
6 efficacy of eosinophil targeted biologic therapy.
7 We know that, eosinophils are, decreased when we
8 treat patients with corticosteroids and Anti-Il-5
9 targeted therapies, with the decrease generally
10 predicting the response. However, in the US,
11 maybe not in some other countries, we're very
12 limited in our ability to use sputum eosinophils
13 because it's expensive to do, it's poorly
14 standardized, and certainly not every patient can
15 actually provide an adequate sputum sample, but.
16 Here you can see, again is the example of the
17 efficacy of an Anti-Il-5 therapy, which really
18 only showed up when you targeted patients who had
19 sputum eosinophilia.

20 All of the earlier trials that had been,
21 done had been negative, but when you selected
22 patients that had sputum eosinophilia in the first

1 pass, you were able to demonstrate efficacy.

2 Well, that was kind of a breakthrough
3 study, needless to say, and so that was very
4 exciting, that sputum eosinophilia could predict
5 response. But we all knew that, that was going to
6 be way too expensive, complicated, et cetera, so.
7 The interest increased again in looking at blood
8 eosinophils, blood eosinophils as a biomarker for
9 predicting responses, to biologic therapy.

10 This was really, despite decades, I
11 think, of research that had been unproductive in
12 determining whether blood eosinophils, or its
13 products, could be a successful biomarker.

14 Overall, the previous studies had showed that, the
15 relationships to sputum eosinophils, or lung
16 eosinophils, was actually quite poor. And there'd
17 been several studies published in that regard.

18 But lo' and behold, when bloody
19 acidophils were used as a surrogate for sputum
20 eosinophilia, in some of the early Anti-Il-5
21 studies, in fact, you were able to predict people
22 that had about a 50 percent reduction in asthma

1 exacerbations, when they were treated with
2 Anti-Il-5 therapy, using 300 eosinophils per
3 microliter as the cut point. Again, I think you
4 can see that, that efficacy curve is actually
5 pretty, similar to what I showed you for sputum
6 eosinophils.

7 Now, that's using kind of a random,
8 random but certainly a specifically defined
9 targeted cut point of 300. How do we come up with
10 that 300? I think this is still, sort of, a
11 moving target, this is an early study that was
12 done with benralizumab, looking at improvement in
13 FEV-1, on the basis of starting a, starting level
14 of blood eosinophils going from 200, to 300, to
15 400. I think it's quite clear that as you
16 increase the number of eosinophils in your blood,
17 there seems to be a better response, so.

18 Where is that actual cut point? It
19 probably varies from patient to patient, the
20 context of the inhaled corticosteroid dose that
21 they're taking, and maybe even whether they just
22 had a viral infection not that long ago, or were

1 exposed to the neighbor's cat. So there's a lot
2 of issues, I think, on what is the best cut point,
3 that still remain.

4 And then, of course, you have to bring
5 up the concept of, do you need to sample several
6 times? How predictive is a single blood
7 eosinophil count as a measurement of elevated
8 blood eosinophils?

9 And this was, I think, a very important
10 study published a few years ago, where patients in
11 a placebo arm of an anti IL5 receptor antibody
12 study were actually followed over the course of
13 their study with multiple eosinophil counts
14 obtained.

15 Basically, of patients entering this
16 trial on placebo, 35 percent of those individuals
17 were with low eosinophils on entry, so less than
18 150 eosinophils per microliter actually reached
19 the 300 microliter threshold at some point in the
20 trial, so really quite a bit of movement, but only
21 22 percent of those with greater than 300, dropped
22 below the 150, so. If you get someone who's over

1 300, I think it's a pretty reasonable indication
2 that they probably generally run high eosinophils,
3 but if they're low, I think that, it does suggest
4 that you should probably measure it several times,
5 and, of course, if you use 150, you have even more
6 movement back and forth.

7 Now, I already alluded to exhaled nitric
8 oxide, and how exhaled nitric oxide can be
9 elevated in a variety of different biologic
10 situations, and I think the same is true for
11 eosinophils. Just the presence of elevated bloody
12 eosinophils, does not necessarily, give you the
13 best indication of how well someone will respond
14 to Anti-Il-5 therapy.

15 This was a study by Jean Blaker and
16 colleagues, the reference got cut off here, that
17 was published a few years ago looking at the
18 predictors of, response to Anti-IL5 receptor
19 antibody therapy.

20 You can see that, there were several
21 reasonable predictors, certainly nasal polyps,
22 perhaps not surprising, since nasal polyps are

1 traditionally associated with high levels of
2 eosinophils in the blood, and oral
3 corticosteroids, more severe disease, but then,
4 there was another one, which was the age at onset
5 of disease. So the later, that you got your
6 disease, the more likely you were to respond to an
7 Anti- IL5 receptor antibody, as compared to early
8 onset disease.

9 The differences were really pretty,
10 dramatic with about a twice as high a number of
11 patients who got their disease later in life
12 responding. I think this then has implications,
13 and I'm glad we had the discussion earlier, about
14 pediatrics, because I don't think you can apply
15 the same standards from adults to children. When
16 the study that was, done looking at mepolizumab in
17 children showed efficacy, yes, indeed, the drug
18 was efficacious in children with high levels of
19 blood eosinophils, but.

20 The efficacy was much less than what we
21 had seen in adults, really, about half of what we
22 had seen in adults. And certainly, if you looked

1 at time to exacerbation, there was actually no
2 difference in the time to exacerbation, so clearly
3 differences, despite the fact that the starting
4 bloody acidophils are, almost exactly, the same.

5 A little bit of a summary about blood
6 eosinophils. Clearly inexpensive, well
7 standardized, every laboratory in the country, and
8 most of the world can do it. It predicts response
9 to all current biologics, but many with elevated
10 levels, will poorly respond. So again, it's very
11 sensitive, but not as specific, levels are
12 impacted by corticosteroids, and are variable.
13 Cut points are loosely applicable, and you may
14 need several measures to determine whether someone
15 truly has elevated eosinophils.

16 They are not currently response
17 biomarkers. For biologic therapies, eosinophils
18 almost always, go to zero with all the Anti-IL-5
19 therapies that are out there without relationship
20 to clinical response. And of course, with
21 dupilumab, you almost always get either no change
22 or, sometimes even an increase, and you'll still

1 get a clinical response, so really, not a very
2 good response biomarker.

3 Let's move to exhaled nitric oxide.
4 Unlike bloody acidophils, where you're really
5 measuring a systemic compartment, this is a
6 measurement of local lung airway inflammation.
7 It's a gas measured in exhaled breath, it's
8 generated by an enzyme called, Inducible Nitric
9 Oxide, that is expressed in high amounts in the
10 airway epithelial cells. It's induced by IL-4 and
11 IL-13 in airway epithelial cells, but also induced
12 by Type-1 cytokines. It's up- regulated in a
13 range of patients, and generally responsive to
14 inhaled corticosteroids, and for that reason, it's
15 been used really as an indicator of poor
16 adherence, but.

17 It can also predict patients who are
18 going to be oral corticosteroid dependent, so it
19 can go from very mild allergic rhinitis patients,
20 all the way to very severe, oral corticosteroid
21 dependent patients. So although it's helpful, it
22 has a lot of, issues but it's probably as good or

1 better, than bloody eosinophils, as a predictive
2 biomarker.

3 And these are data from the anti-TSLP
4 study looking at the improvement in exacerbations
5 with increasing levels of bloody eosinophils. And
6 you can see that there's a very nice improvement
7 in exacerbations, as bloody acidophils increase,
8 but similar to that, you saw a similar increase in
9 reduction in exacerbations as levels of exhaled
10 nitric oxide increased, so seemingly pretty, good
11 indicator for responses in exacerbations.

12 Now, the thing that differentiates
13 exhaled nitric oxide from bloody acidophils, in my
14 opinion, is that it's a pretty good response
15 biomarker, so.

16 FeNO declines with Anti-IL4 receptor
17 antibodies, and anti-TSLP antibodies doesn't
18 decline with Anti-Il-5 antibodies, and this is
19 from an early study that we did, looking at the
20 effect of dupilumab on exhaled nitric oxide.

21 You can see that within four weeks there
22 was a pretty, nice reduction in exhaled nitric

1 oxide. And interestingly, that degree of
2 reduction in exhaled nitric oxide, actually
3 correlated quite nicely with an R-value of 0.4
4 with the improvement in FEV-1, so it really did
5 have a response that was tracked with the clinical
6 response, but. Interestingly, it doesn't predict
7 the reduction in exacerbations, that is actually
8 separate.

9 I give you a summary of exhaled nitric
10 oxide: Exhaled nitric oxide requires an FDA
11 approved device to measure. The actual cost is
12 low, but often, it's not approved by insurance.
13 Absolute levels cover a broad range, no little
14 correlation with severity or control. Cut points
15 remain fluid, and contextual predicts response to
16 Anti-IgE, IL4R, and anti-TSLP, it's a response
17 biomarker for FEV-1 with Anti-IL4R and possibly
18 anti-TSLP, but. The lack of decrease in FeNO to
19 biologics, or corticosteroids, may indicate that
20 there's complexities underlying that inflammation,
21 which suggest that, the loss of that decrease is
22 due to increasing complexity of the disease

1 itself, so.

2 Can an index better predict response?

3 Bloody acidophils and exhaled nitric oxide alone,
4 are of modest predictive value, so can we combine
5 them? Can we combine a systemic biomarker and an
6 airway biomarker, to lead to better prediction of
7 responses?

8 And elevations in both, could in fact
9 indicate, the greatest Type-2 inflammation. So I
10 actually thought about this and went back to the
11 severe Asthma research Program SARP database, an
12 NIH sponsored study, and pulled out the patients
13 in our dataset, and this is about 500 patients,
14 and divided them by their bloodiest infills,
15 greater than or equal to 300, their exhaled nitric
16 oxide. Oxide greater than or equal to 25, in the
17 18 year olds and above, so this is only adults,
18 and I think what you can see is, as you go across
19 from left to right, the people on the left, less
20 than 25, less than 300, have very little elevation
21 of Type-2 biomarkers. On the end, you have those
22 individuals who are elevated exhaled nitric oxide,

1 elevated blood eosinophils.

2 There's actually, five times greater
3 sputum eosinophils in those who have both
4 biomarkers elevated, as opposed to one or the
5 other. There's a fourfold increase in the Type-2
6 gene mean, again, consistent with a lot of Type-2
7 inflammation. They have a 50 percent greater
8 exacerbation risk, they have a lower FEV 1,
9 percent predicted, and they have a higher
10 bronchodilator response.

11 You do not see this pattern in children.
12 I went and looked at the SARP database by children
13 that relationship does not, exist in the children,
14 so it's very specific to adults and asthma.

15 How does that apply to responses to
16 biologic therapy? Certainly, we actually have
17 some data that have suggested that that
18 combination of an index might be better than
19 either biomarker alone.

20 This is with dupilumab data, and again,
21 the four boxes are generally here, with low
22 exhaled nitric oxide in the orange box, the

1 highest exhaled nitric oxide and blood eosinophils
2 in the green box. You can see looking at rates of
3 exacerbation, as a start, the rates of
4 exacerbation are considerably less in patients
5 with less, elevations in these biomarkers. If you
6 have one elevation or the other, the exacerbation
7 rate increases a little bit, but when you have the
8 combination, you have the greatest degree of
9 exacerbations.

10 Then, when you intervene with the
11 biologic, in this case, dupilumab, there is the
12 greatest reduction in exacerbations, and it's
13 independent of dose, both doses worked equally
14 well. Are there any non Type-2 biomarkers? Well,
15 as I began, the lack of Type-2 biomarkers
16 currently defines Type-2 low, and Type-2 low may
17 actually be a corticosteroid effect, that they
18 have suppressed most of the Type-2 inflammation.

19 Sputum neutrophils, are highly variable,
20 poorly predictive, CRP is, only occasionally,
21 elevated, so what about IL-6? We know now, from
22 several years ago, that high plasma Aisle-6,

1 associates with components of asthma severity,
2 components of the metabolic syndrome.

3 This is Michael Peters' work it was,
4 published, several years ago. High IL-6 bears no
5 relationship to Type-2 biomarkers, and it can be
6 present in patients with high Type-

7 Biomarkers, or in patients who have no
8 Type-2 biomarkers. It certainly associates with
9 more severe disease exacerbations. Lower lung
10 function does associate with higher BMI metabolic
11 abnormalities and, it also, interestingly
12 associates with, higher all cause mortality.

13 In our SARP data set, it generally
14 associates with poor outcomes across diseases. I
15 actually think, it's a biomarker of badness, as it
16 were, no matter what your disease.

17 It's also, interestingly, independently
18 influenced by pollution, and we're going to
19 present some of that work at ATS. This is just
20 plasma IL-6 in relationship to exacerbations,
21 again, in the SARP network. I think you can see
22 that in the panel to your left, that as IL-6

1 levels increase, there is a very robust
2 predictability of exacerbations measured
3 longitudinally, which is actually better than the
4 ability of bloody acidophils alone, to do that,
5 so.

6 In conclusion, Type-2 biomarkers, bloody
7 acidophils, and FeNO, have greatly improved our
8 ability to phenotype and treat, asthma and severe
9 asthma. The prediction of responses to biologics
10 is imperfect, and they likely perform less well in
11 children.

12 Blood eosinophils and IL-6 are all
13 predictive biomarkers, but only FeNO and sputum
14 eosinophils are somewhat response biomarkers.
15 Development of FeNO blood eosinophil, maybe, even
16 with and without IL-6 in adults, could greatly
17 increase our predictive, our ability to predict
18 the response to biologics, and.

19 Type-2 low asthma, remains with limited
20 biomarkers, but in fact, I actually think that
21 IL-6 may be the best predictive biomarker for the
22 most severe outcomes, but we have no idea whether

1 it's a response biomarker.

2 Thank you very much --

3 DR. HERSHEY: We'll move on to our next
4 speaker, Dr. Robert Hamilton. He's a professor
5 of medicine and director of the Dermatology,
6 Allergy, and Clinical Immunology Reference
7 Laboratory at the Johns Hopkins University.

8 The title of his talk is: Component
9 resolved testing and IgEE quality as prognostic
10 and predictive biomarkers.

11 DR. HAMILTON: Thank you very much.
12 Well, I've changed the title a little bit to focus
13 on IgE antibody as an ideal diagnostic monitoring
14 response, predictive and prognostic biomarker in
15 respiratory allergic disease.

16 I'm going to extend it, not only to
17 allergic asthma, but actually to other forms of
18 respiratory allergic disease. My theme today is
19 to try and, convince you that, it's time to
20 transition from a single-plex technology that
21 we've been using since 2010, when the NIH and the
22 FDA held their biomarker meeting on asthma years

1 ago, to a new technology that's come out of
2 Europe. It's cleared in Europe, and is poised to
3 be maybe cleared by the FDA here in the United
4 States.

5 First, I would like to begin by over
6 viewing IgE antibody, identified as the core
7 bought biomarker for atopy assessment in asthma
8 studies that we identified in a 2010, NIH FDA
9 biomarker workshop on allergic disease, very much
10 like what we're holding today.

11 Second, I'd like to describe how the IgE
12 antibody fits into multiple biomarker categories.

13 And third, I'd like to examine the pros
14 and cons of the technology that was used back in
15 2010, that was available, was most cost effective,
16 and how today we have a new technology, that we
17 need to consider its pros and cons as well.

18 The allergy explorer, the microarray
19 that came out of Vienna, the following of, the
20 ALEX 2 chip IgE and, how it can actually help us
21 in assessing atopic status in respiratory diseases
22 such as allergic asthma. And also, it has impact

1 on food allergy, that we'll hear about later from
2 Dr. Sampson and a variety of others.

3 I don't have to convince you that IgE
4 has a central role to play in allergic reactions,
5 and so therefore, IgE antibody can serve as a very
6 good confirmatory marker for atopic status.
7 That's what it was identified at this 2010
8 biomarker meeting, the presence of IgE antibody is
9 a risk factor for allergic disease, and we all
10 know that it needs to be linked with a clinical
11 history to make a diagnosis, so it's not
12 definitive, but it's very important.

13 As a risk factor, IgE helps us confirm
14 changes in atopic status following exposure to
15 environmental allergens and therapeutic
16 interventions. It helps us confirm immune
17 responses following exposure to environmental
18 allergen sources, so it can be a response marker
19 IgE antibody to select allergenic molecules
20 components.

21 And part of my talk is to convince you
22 that, we now have to begin looking more at the

1 component specific IgE responses, and so it can
2 help us in identifying certain risk related risks
3 associated with serious allergic reactions. And
4 we've heard about Corey Keith's work with Area-2
5 that, maybe didn't span out in later studies in
6 adults. We'll hear more about that.

7 Finally, IgE as a prognostic biomarker
8 can identify the likelihood of allergic responses,
9 only when it's linked with the clinical history,
10 with a convincing, objective association of
11 symptoms with temporal exposure to the allergen
12 itself. So IgE antibody discriminates asthma
13 subtypes very well, and possibly, as possibly the
14 most important discriminator to help us define
15 whether in fact it's allergic triggers, or it's
16 non allergic triggers that you have to focus on
17 when you're managing your allergy patient.

18 If you look at IgE in terms of the best
19 guidance document listing of a biomarker, IgE has
20 all the properties of a very well defined
21 biomarker. It has UniProt code, it's found in
22 serum, biologically, it's very, very linked. It's

1 linked well with the binding TIGEFc receptors on
2 mast cells, and basophils and involved in the
3 release of, mediators following exposure to
4 allergenic molecules, and associated with, chronic
5 inflammation in bronchi as it relates to allergic
6 asthma.

7 Now, back in 2010, the best technology
8 we had, which was the least expensive analysis,
9 was the Phadiatop system.

10 This multiallergen screen on the
11 Immunocap system, and as a single-plex assay
12 system, it allowed us to get a discrimination
13 between the presence and absence of, allergic
14 disease to 10 major aero allergens, that we
15 thought drove most of the allergic disease in the
16 United States.

17 The problem was it was a plus or minus,
18 yes or no. And every asthma study that was funded
19 by the NIH after 2010 was asked to measure
20 Phadiatop, as an indicator to separate atopic from
21 nonatopic asthma, as a biomarker. In my lab,
22 we've participated in a lot of NIH sponsored

1 analyses, studies such as, the echo crew, and a
2 variety of other multicenter studies, all of which
3 had Phadiatop as a target.

4 Now, oftentimes they wanted, after the
5 Phadiatop positive response, to discriminate
6 between the actual specificities of the allergens
7 that are driving the allergic response, and that
8 required measuring IgE antibody to individual
9 allergens. The problem was that was very costly
10 and really, not in the purview of most of the NH
11 sponsored asthma and allergy, respiratory allergy
12 related studies that we actually were involved
13 with.

14 So back us to 2010 and this very
15 important NIH and FDA sponsored biomarker study
16 workshop. Alkis Togias was coordinating it at
17 that point. We had many of you actually in that
18 meeting, and of all the biomarkers that were
19 identified, and. I don't want to diminish in any
20 way, iron oxide or eosinophilic measurements, the
21 core biomarker that was identified for
22 recommendations for every asthma study that was

1 supported by the NIH, was the Phadiatop, the multi
2 allergen screen, that allowed discrimination of
3 atopic versus nonatopic disease, the presence of
4 IgE antibody.

5 The problem was, at that time, and it
6 was the best technology for the cost, it had ten
7 aerology measurements, and so, it was marked as a
8 core biomarker, and all the others were either
9 supplemental or emerging. The publication that
10 Dr. Scheffler, and Dr. Wenzel chaired and
11 published two years after that meeting, sort of
12 set the stage for NIH sponsored respiratory
13 related disease studies to almost, require a
14 discrimination of atopic versus non-atopic,
15 status.

16 So the Phadiatop, let me just, for those
17 of you that are not familiar with this technology,
18 quickly indicate that, the Phadiatop has two
19 components to it. It has a calibration component,
20 where we have an anti IgE that binds to an IgE
21 reference serum, it's the third IgE reference
22 preparation, and it's detected by an anti-IgE 2-

1 site immunoenzymetric assay, on the other side of
2 the assay system, so runs simultaneously. We have
3 a solid phase allergen.

4 Now, in the multiallergen screen, we
5 actually have 10 aeroallergens linked to that
6 solid phase so. We're measuring IgE antibody to
7 10, one-to-ten aeroallergen measurements, and we
8 add the patient serum, if we can add the patient
9 serum, and then it binds to maybe one of the
10 aeroallergens on that solid phase, and we detect
11 it, with the same anti IgE detection antibody.

12 Now, the reason why this works, and it's
13 reasonably quantitative, is because when you
14 dilute out the calibration curve with the specific
15 IgE measurement, they dilute out in parallel. So
16 you can actually get close to quantitative
17 measurements of IgE antibody. And in fact, the
18 IgE antibody assay that we have today, is possibly
19 the most quantitative antibody that's used in all
20 diagnostic immunology today, because of this
21 technology that has been fostered both by Thermal,
22 Fisher and also by Siemens.

1 Now, the strengths of the Phadiatop,
2 which were identified in 2010, were that it's a
3 single screening assay, typically between 30 and
4 \$50 per measurement, and it could discriminate, or
5 determine IgE antibody to the 10 aeroallergens
6 that were believed to be, the major aero allergens
7 driving most allergic respiratory allergic disease
8 in the United States.

9 The Phadiatop in Europe had birch,
10 instead of replaced birch with oak. This single
11 test was required for most aeroallergen related
12 NIH sponsored studies, and it required only 40
13 micro liters of serum, with a hundred micro liter
14 dead volume. So the quantity of serum was very
15 reasonable, the cost was very, very minimal, for
16 getting this very key piece of information, but.
17 What were its limitations?

18 Well, it was a qualitative measurement,
19 positive or negative. She didn't know if it was a
20 specific IgE response to dust mite, or to oak, or
21 to any of the other tenor allergens that were
22 identified. And now FDA really didn't want us to

1 indicate to you what the specificities were, but
2 because we're moving way beyond the Phadiatop, to
3 a multiallergen screen with almost 300 allergen
4 specificities, this becomes irrelevant.

5 So we were measuring dust mite, cat dog,
6 Alternaria, two tree pollen allergens, tree oak
7 and elm, two grass pollens, the meadow fescue,
8 Canadian blue, and the Bermuda, and then two
9 weeds, ragweed, and then saltwort.

10 Now, the problem was, as we grew after
11 2010 we realized, well, we're missing a mouse,
12 we're missing cockroach, both very important
13 indoor air allergens driving a lot of asthma. It
14 had no definitive specificity data. It was
15 positive or negative. That didn't tell us very
16 much, but it did help discriminate, at least in
17 the early days, between atopic and non-atopic
18 asthma.

19 And it didn't give us any information
20 about what we know today to be, these molecular
21 allergen cross reactive families, profilins and
22 thermomyacin. And so for all these reasons, along

1 came the group in Vienna that developed the ISAC,
2 that was sold to Thermo-Fisher Scientific, and
3 they developed a new technology called the ALEX
4 Explorer.

5 The Allergy Explorer has a tremendous
6 number of strengths and a couple of limitations.

7 It's a multiallergen specific IgE
8 antibody, chip based array that has on it measures
9 of IgE antibody to 117 individual allergenic
10 components, sorry extracts, and 178 individual
11 allergenic components. Very powerful technology,
12 very, very amazing, requires 100 microliters of
13 serum with a dead volume of 40, it's almost
14 equivalent to the Phadiatop, but.

15 Its strengths are that it gives you
16 quantitative measurements for all of these
17 allergenic specificities and close to a
18 quantitative, almost close to a quantitative
19 measurement with greater than 0.3 units per liter,
20 which is very close to that 0.35, which we all
21 claim is clinically relevant for Immunocap. It
22 can go down to 0.1, but at 0.1 to 0.35 there's

1 some question about the clinical utility of those
2 measurements.

3 It gives you definitive specificity
4 data. It gives you information about cross
5 reactive, allergenic family IgE antibody
6 reactivity, very important in both respiratory and
7 in food allergy and, it's becoming even more
8 important in venom allergy.

9 Now, limitation is, and I can see Bob
10 Wood, the pediatric allergist who runs the clinic
11 at Hopkins saying, this is absolutely,
12 unacceptable. It's a fixed panel, so you're
13 measuring IgE antibody to almost 300 allergen
14 specificities, which means you're going to detect
15 venom in a person who has asthma. Is venom
16 specific IgE relevant to asthma? Well, probably
17 not, but is it useful to know about it, well,
18 maybe it is.

19 The other thing is, it detects
20 asymptomatic sensitization. You can be positive
21 for IgE antibody, but not have any clinically
22 relevant objective symptoms, so the fixed panel is

1 really, one of the constraints, and.

2 This technology involves a chip. On the
3 chip, there are almost 300 allergenic
4 specificities marked in little dots, and it has, a
5 number of the dots around it are actually
6 controls, it has built in control, and it, believe
7 it, or not, even has a total serum IgE that's been
8 indicated.

9 Now, if you compare the IgE and the
10 ALEX-2 version, it doesn't agree perfectly well
11 with the Immucap and the Immulite based on the
12 College of American Pathology Proficiency Program
13 that we have in the United States, so. The
14 Phadiatop, as we know, has these ten
15 aeroallergens, and I've marked in red the
16 specificities that match really the Phadiatop. As
17 I mentioned, what's missing is, at least for
18 asthma studies, is Inner City Asthma Studies is
19 mouse and cockroach.

20 And I want to also point out that, it
21 has molecular molecules that allow you to
22 discriminate and identify IgE antibody to all the

1 major 10 aero, and food, and venom, cross reactive
2 allergen families. These are the profilins, the
3 PR-10 family, the nonspecific lipid transfer
4 proteins. And I'll go on and on, and you can
5 actually look and look at it in the molecular
6 allergology user guide, that was published by
7 EAACI back, actually this past year, and the
8 references at the bottom.

9 Now, to investigate the utility of the
10 ALEX-2 in comparison to the classic Phadiatop, we
11 went to University of Chicago, and they were
12 studying two genetically identical populations.
13 One was Amish and one was Hutterites, and the
14 Hutterites had a threefold higher frequency of
15 asthma than in fact, the Amish, and the question
16 was why?

17 We knew that the Amish used
18 non-mechanical farming horse plows and they rode
19 around in their horse buggies to church, whereas
20 the Hutterites actually used mechanical farming
21 machinery, and they were very, very state of the
22 art. We evaluated the atopic status of these

1 asthmatic children using, both the Phadiatop and
2 the ALEX-2, to confirm the specificities with the
3 ALEX-2, because I was a little bit skeptical of
4 some of these.

5 I confirmed, a lot of these
6 specificities, with the Immunocap individual
7 measurements. If you take and look at two groups,
8 one group was the Phadiatop negative population, a
9 total IgE, less than 100 international units per
10 ML, and a negative Phadiatop negative for 10 aero-
11 allergen specificities. The second group we
12 looked at, were the positive Phadiatop greater
13 than 100 international units of total IgE, and a
14 positive Phadiatop.

15 Now, if you take just an example of the
16 individuals that were negative for a Phadiatop,
17 and had a total IgE less than 100, so they'd be
18 really classically defined as nonatopic. And look
19 at six of the individuals, three of them had IgE
20 antibody, to allergens that either were poorly
21 represented on the Phadiatop, such as the
22 individual number two that had IgE antibody to

1 drop 23, poorly represented on the Phadiatop.
2 Because of the limited binding capacity of the
3 actual matrix, where you can't bind all the
4 allergenic molecules from dust mite, when you have
5 ragweed and all the others on there.

6 We also detected one of the children had
7 an IgE antibody response to honeybee venom. Now
8 these are farm children, they're out playing with
9 their honeybee hives all the time, so that's
10 relevant, but it's not relevant to asthma. It was
11 relevant to the well being of the child. If we
12 look at the second population time, second
13 population, we have a discrimination zero
14 allergens, such as all of the grasses in the
15 trees, but also detected IgE antibody to
16 aspergillus.

17 Now, alternaria was on the Phadiatop,
18 not aspergillus, but isn't aspergillus as
19 important as alternaria for sensitivity to
20 respiratory disease? And also we detected, IgE
21 antibody to rabbit, these kids all happen to have
22 rabbits as pets, so those were detected in

1 addition to the aero allergens.

2 Finally, the IgE antibody measurements
3 with the ALEX-2 allowed detection of the
4 specificities to the allergenic components. And
5 the example I'll give you is an individual child
6 who actually had IgE antibody not only to some of
7 the major aero allergens detected in the
8 Phadiatop, but also to the profilins, where they
9 had some reactive, some oral allergy symptoms
10 related to melon, because of the cross reactive
11 molecules between the profilin melon and the
12 bridge pollen responses.

13 Now, the two challenges I see with
14 merging, or moving from a Phadiatop to a
15 multiallergen ALEX-2 are twofold.

16 First, there's just an overwhelming
17 amount of information that's provided here.

18 You get 300 allergen measurements, many
19 of which are extract and component comparable. So
20 you would detect similar, but the company also has
21 allowed us to get information very rapidly, just a
22 minute. Allowed us to get information rapidly by

1 using software called Raptor, which calculates the
2 data rapidly, and then Raven, which actually
3 allows interpretations using sophisticated AI
4 related information.

5 The second challenge is really, the
6 asymptomatic sensitization.

7 I know some allergists are going to
8 really be, unhappy with detecting honeybee venom
9 in a person who, they would only search out for
10 IgE antibody to the aero, allergens or, to a food
11 allergen. Like Bob wood, that just really would
12 say, this is ridiculous, I shouldn't be detecting
13 IgE antibody, I can't explain, because there are
14 no symptoms in this.

15 This is just a simple summary to show
16 you where in fact we stand. The Alex-2 is pending
17 clearance with the FDA, it can't be used right
18 now, probably only for NIH sponsored studies.

19 It measures many, many more allergen
20 specificities, the amount of serum needed is
21 comparable to the Phadiatop, the cost is about
22 threefold higher, the sensitivity is slightly

1 less, but it gives you quantitative data. It
2 allows you to deal with this issue of
3 carbohydrate, cross reactive, determinants that,
4 it deals with directly by an inhibitor.

5 One of its limitations, well
6 established, is the high levels of IgE and IgE-4
7 antibody after immunotherapy can inhibit the
8 actual binding of the IgE to the limited amount of
9 binding capacity on the chip.

10 One last thing, I have to go, and I
11 would like to suggest to you the following: We
12 are starting a brand new research study called the
13 US atopic status study, which will follow in the
14 vein of the N. Haynes, which will be done in two
15 years time. We are recruiting new fellows from 15
16 centers in the United States to collect serum on
17 100 individuals. Send it to us, and take a
18 standardized history, and they will receive an
19 Alex-2 profile, plus an Immunocap profile, and AI
20 supported interpretations of those data.

21 The educational opportunity -- you're
22 going to push me off, one second, I'm almost done.

1 I view this as a great educational opportunity for
2 new fellows coming into allergy, where they'll
3 learn about IRB submissions, about the power of
4 molecular allergy, and also get their name on an
5 authorized paper that's peer reviewed.

6 And with that, I'd like to say that --
7 it's maybe now time to begin considering the new
8 technology on the block for discriminating atopic
9 status, the Alex-2. But we have to remember the
10 golden rule of diagnostics, and that is that
11 asymptomatic sensitization tells us that, even
12 with any method that we measure, we detect IgE
13 antibody, we have to always link it to the
14 clinical history, objective temporal relationships
15 between the symptoms and the exposure, to actually
16 make the diagnosis of allergic disease with that.

17 Thank you very much for being patient,
18 appreciate it.

19 DR. HERSHEY: All right, thanks
20 everybody. We're going to break for lunch now,
21 and as Ron said, there's going to be food
22 available, I think, at the same place where coffee

1 was available this morning. I'm not sure how long
2 it's going to take to get all through there, so
3 I'm a little reluctant to shrink our lunchtime.
4 So let's plan to meet back at 12:15, okay.

5 (Recess)

6 DR. HERSHEY: All right, everybody,
7 we're going to go ahead and get started. It's
8 1:15. This is continuing Session 2, Biomarkers in
9 Respiratory Allergic Disease. So please take your
10 seats and I'll introduce our next speaker. Our
11 next speaker is Dr. Matthew Altman. He's an
12 Associate Professor in the division of Allergy and
13 Infectious Diseases Department of Medicine at the
14 University of Washington, and he's the head of the
15 allergy section. The title for his presentation
16 today is Host Prognostic Biomarkers for Childhood
17 Asthma. Thanks, Matt.

18 DR. ALTMAN: Well, thanks, Nero
19 (phonetic), and thanks everybody.
20 Hope everyone had a good lunch.
21 And I'll start slow as people make
22 their way back in. But it's a

1 pleasure to be here. So, Nero
2 mentioned the topic, but I'm going
3 to talk about prognostic biomarkers
4 for childhood asthma, and I'm going
5 to talk largely about some of our
6 work, which is through the Inner
7 City Asthma Consortium, now CAUSE
8 Consortium, as sort of an example I
9 think, more than any currently
10 established biomarkers, but an
11 example of what we're doing and
12 what can be done.

13 So, we actually got this background.
14 I'm going to just have like two slides on
15 background and then kind of get into the current
16 science. I think Sally Wenzel set this up very
17 nicely. This is just to kind of give an example
18 that there are certain biomarkers that we use in
19 asthma. This is actually adults. They've been
20 nicely summarized in this New England Journal
21 article from about a year ago, and they are, in
22 effect, blood eosinophils, FeNO and the presence

1 or absence of allergic sensitization. And
2 certainly, those are useful, but as I'll show in a
3 moment, they're far from perfect.

4 And again, just a little background. I
5 have another talk where I go through this in
6 detail. So how did we get to these biomarkers and
7 why do they matter? Well, I think the example of
8 blood eosinophils and anti-IL-5 therapies is a
9 perfect example, and this is just to illustrate
10 that we had several studies of, in this case,
11 mepolizumab. They're the first four listed there
12 outside the green box that attempted to use
13 mepolizumab to treat asthma, asthma allcomers
14 without a biomarker, and they failed. It was only
15 when blood eosinophils or other metrics of
16 eosinophilia were incorporated that we saw
17 positive outcomes and led to the ultimate approval
18 of the drug and really the explosion of biologics
19 and asthma that we've had over the last decade or
20 so.

21 And this is just to illustrate it. This
22 was the Lancet paper showing the efficacy of

1 mepolizumab, specifically in those adults with
2 sputum eosinophils, elevated sputum eosinophils,
3 FeNO or peripheral blood eosinophils. Now, the
4 trouble still with this, and this is what I'm
5 going to illustrate in the next point, is that
6 there's an efficacy there. You can see a
7 reduction in exacerbations by about 50 percent,
8 but it's far from complete. So, if blood
9 eosinophils were truly a marker of response to
10 this drug, you'd expect something closer to 100
11 percent reduction in exacerbations, which, of
12 course, we don't have.

13 So, what is lacking with our current
14 therapies, or r maybe I should say with our
15 current biomarkers? It's to say that while
16 they're effective in the studied populations like
17 mepolizumab, in that example, all of them -- I
18 mean, I showed you one of many RCTS looking at
19 biologics in asthma, it's about 50 percent at
20 best. Which means one of a couple of things.
21 Either 50 percent of people don't respond despite
22 having the biomarker of elevated blood

1 eosinophils, they all have a 50 percent response
2 rate, or somewhere in the middle of that. And I
3 think the reality is exactly that. It's somewhere
4 in the middle. You have some people who have a
5 perfect response, some people who have no
6 response, and some people who have a partial
7 response. And in part from not having a lot of
8 molecular data in the studies, we don't know
9 terribly well who those responders and
10 non-responders are.

11 Just sort of, to some of the other
12 points we heard earlier today. One, we don't
13 actually have comparison. So, we have the same
14 biomarkers in effect for all these drugs, but we
15 don't know which works for whom and what
16 biomarkers may be better for one drug or the
17 other. And we don't really have molecular data of
18 the response or non-response to best understand
19 these drugs.

20 So, what we've been doing in the Inner
21 City Asthma Consortium is to ask, can we use these
22 rationally designed drugs, these rationally

1 designed biologics, but this could really apply to
2 any therapy, to better understand the mechanisms
3 of treatment response and failure. Which, if we
4 understand the mechanisms, that should give us
5 more precise biomarkers and then ultimately, more
6 precise treatment selection. And to identify,
7 ideally, novel treatments for those who don't
8 respond to the current drugs.

9 So, I'm going to spend most of my time
10 talking about this study that we carried out in
11 the Inner City Asthma Consortium. It's called
12 MUPPITS 2, and it's really just to illustrate --
13 and at the end, I'll give you several other
14 studies we've done, sort of towards the same
15 approach, but just to give an illustrative
16 example. So, here we were looking at mechanisms
17 underlying asthma's exacerbations, prevented or
18 persistent with, in this case, mepolizumab
19 therapy. These were 6 to 17 year old urban
20 children with relatively severe asthma, at least
21 two exacerbations per year, and they met the
22 criteria of having elevated blood eosinophils.

1 And I don't write it here, but they all had
2 allergic sensitization as well, with varying
3 levels of IGE. And it was just a simple RCT of
4 mepolizumab versus placebo, plus guidelines based
5 management for a year. And with most asthma
6 studies, the primary outcome was rate of
7 exacerbations. I guess what set it apart, is
8 what's listed there at the bottom, is we
9 integrated a lot of ancillary mechanistic studies,
10 and I'm going to focus really on airway
11 transcriptomic profiling, though I'll draw a
12 slight contrast to what we see in the blood
13 because that was brought up earlier. We've also
14 looked at sputum, blood flow, cytometry of the
15 eosinophil and other things. But again, I'll
16 focus on the transcriptomics.

17 So, the clinical question was pretty
18 simple, does the drug work or not? And actually,
19 Dr. Wenzel showed this outcome earlier, but in
20 effect, it did. So, we did see a significant
21 reduction of exacerbations, but not even at that
22 50 percent rate that I alluded to for most of

1 these studies. Rather, it was .73 rate ratio,
2 indicating probably this drug is somewhat less
3 effective in children, and maybe we can find out
4 why. And I guess that's actually important,
5 because if we want to get it, responders or non
6 responders, we need this sort of clinical outcome.

7 So, then my question for the study was,
8 as I alluded to, what are the actual
9 mechanisms/what predicts responder status? So,
10 I'll just sort of outline this in general. I
11 won't go into a ton of detail. But as we heard
12 from Alkis earlier, you can actually get a lot of
13 information from the nose. So, in this case, we
14 use sinus lavage, which is a heterogeneous mixed
15 cell sample. We can get a lot of information from
16 that. What I list here is virology, cell
17 differentials, and host mRNA sequencing. Same
18 with blood, and we can look at airway and
19 peripheral response over time in these children.

20 This is the most complicated figure I'll
21 show, so I'll walk through it somewhat slowly and
22 you can, of course, read about it in detail in the

1 publication. So, from that nasal lavage sample,
2 we measure 15,000 genes, the expression of them.
3 In prior work, we had already done a
4 dimensionality reduction to understand what are
5 the fundamental pathways that you can identify in
6 this. 12 of them are listed here. These are, of
7 the 50 plus pathways we had previously identified,
8 the ones we found to be most associated with the
9 primary outcome. So again, rate of exacerbations.
10 This is a sparse partially squares regression
11 analysis. So, we're selecting out the features
12 that show the greatest relationship in either
13 placebo or mepolizumab. And the bars indicate, as
14 you can see in the bottom, a propensity to either
15 a higher or lower exacerbation rate. And red is
16 the Placebo group and blue is the mepolizumab
17 group. But basically, what you can see -- and
18 this is all at baseline, so this is before they
19 received the drug at the time of randomization.
20 So, what you can see is that there's a
21 block of eosinophils associated modules related to
22 type 2 inflammation, eicosanoid metabolism,

1 cytoplasmic proteins that indicate if you go on
2 placebo, you're going to do poorly, you're going
3 to have a high rate of exacerbations, and if you
4 go onto mepolizumab, you're going to do well.
5 That was relatively expected, albeit there's sort
6 of more detail here than simply blood
7 eosinophilia.

8 In contrast, we then found that whole
9 block of epithelial pathways that showed somewhat
10 the opposite. So higher expression of those
11 tended to indicate you're going to do worse if you
12 receive mepolizumab, probably than you would have
13 even done with placebo alone. And then you see
14 some that are sort of mixed and invariant to the
15 drug, like the eosinophils activation mucous
16 secretion pathway, where you're kind of going to
17 do poorly regardless of treatment if you have high
18 elevation of that. And then at the bottom, there
19 are some protective ones, but it gives us an
20 overall profile of, sort of, who does well and who
21 doesn't do well on the drug.

22 And just to then take it a step further,

1 we had baseline sample collection. We also had
2 sample collection at time points throughout, and
3 here we're showing end of study. But you can see,
4 as you would expect, those eosinophil pathways are
5 decreased by mepolizumab therapy. That's the
6 first column with the down arrows. And again,
7 quite curiously, we saw that mepolizumab actually
8 increased the level of some of these epithelial
9 pathways at the group level and placebo had no
10 effect on any of these. So that was nice. It
11 gave us sort of an indicator of responsiveness.

12 What we've gone on to do since then is
13 really more targeted towards this development of a
14 biomarker. So can we use a combination of these
15 or ultimately then a combination perhaps of a few
16 genes to really predict response to therapy? So,
17 looks like a little bit of a PowerPoint issue
18 here. But the method we use, this is sort of all
19 machine learning approaches, we used here model
20 based recursive partitioning, which is just a
21 flexible approach where you can kind of use
22 interaction models, you can use a negative

1 binomial distribution for the rate of
2 exacerbation. So, it's just useful for this data
3 type and you can now partition your population to
4 identify what are the cut points for responder and
5 non responder.

6 So, when we do that, if we take these 12
7 pathways, that I showed in the PLS model, and just
8 plug them in, we can kind of pick, again, one or
9 two or even three of these modules and the cut
10 point at which you see a clear response or not.
11 So, in this case, the first one is an epithelial
12 associated extracellular matrix module that cuts a
13 group that's going to do poorly, then one of the
14 eosinophils modules that's going to cut a group
15 that does well. If you plug that back into a more
16 familiar view, in effect, what you can see is we
17 now, in the middle graph here, identify those who
18 are high by that cut point in the eosinophils
19 pathway, low in the epithelial pathway. And
20 suddenly we see a better, albeit still not
21 perfect, response to mepolizumab.

22 In contrast, on the right hand we see a

1 group, again, that has the high epithelial, that's
2 showing a trend anyway towards a poor response,
3 and then a fairly large subset of the population
4 that does relatively well in terms of exacerbation
5 rates and well, whether they're on placebo or not.
6 So, this allows us to, in effect, partition based
7 off of a couple of biomarkers who in the
8 population really needed the drug, who probably
9 should not have been in the study for one reason
10 or another. But we can do better than that. And
11 again, we can ultimately do this in a way that
12 might be clinically applicable into the future.
13 So those modules are composed of hundreds of
14 genes. There's a lot of bioinformatics necessary
15 to do that. Ultimately, if we could have a 1 or 2
16 or 3 or 4 gene panel, that would probably be much
17 more clinically relevant.

18 So, in this case, again, we can go
19 towards sort of, you know, machine learning to
20 probe this large data set. I just show this to
21 kind of motivate the method we're using. This is
22 LASSO Regression with cross-validation and test

1 and training to make sure that we're fitting the
2 data well without overfitting it. And from that,
3 selecting out a parsimonious set of genes which
4 are going to best partition our population. So,
5 you can use various metrics here but we'll select
6 down to a small number of genes, something like
7 20, that explain most of the variance of the
8 cohort. And then from there go back and use this
9 model based recursive partitioning to understand
10 how our population should be subdivided.

11 So, when we do that, we can now move to
12 a 3 gene panel, which I have listed here. And
13 these are by no means the be all, end all of
14 biomarkers, but it's a first approach or a first
15 attempt at what works well for this study
16 population. And what you can see is there's an
17 eosinophil associated gene SWAP-70, a neutrophil
18 associated gene, and an epithelial associated
19 gene, where again, we can partition the population
20 now into four groups, and in this case get an even
21 better understanding of response and non-response.

22 So, on the left hand side of that, you

1 can see those who have really a dramatic response
2 to the drug and those who would be theoretically
3 the ideal candidates in this cohort to be treated.
4 In the third panel, again, this idea that perhaps
5 there are those who actually do poorly on the
6 drug, and we see that now as more statistically
7 robust, those who have high ACE-2 expression in
8 the epithelium, and then two other groups that are
9 sort of more modest or a null effect. This sort
10 of approach has now given us, at least again
11 within this cohort, this, of course, all needs
12 validation and many other steps down the road, but
13 a way of best selecting out responders and
14 non-responders.

15 Before I leave this study, I mean, that
16 was really the take home point. I actually don't
17 know how much time I have left, but I just wanted
18 to say one more thing, so I'll plug this in. In
19 addition to sort of profiling at baseline, I think
20 what's been very important in this study and other
21 studies we've done is to then actually understand
22 what's going on during illness. So again, in

1 childhood asthma we're usually looking at
2 exacerbations rather than just profiling during
3 wellness, we can profile during illness, and
4 compare expression patterns in an exacerbation
5 happening on drug or off of drug. And what we
6 see, again, this is a lot of information, but here
7 is I'm highlighting those pathways in red that are
8 particularly elevated during on the left
9 mepolizumab exacerbations versus placebo
10 exacerbations versus non-exacerbation events. On
11 the right, two columns, and you can see they look
12 very different. And in fact, many of the same
13 pathways that I indicated as predictors for a poor
14 response are also highly elevated during the
15 mepolizumab exacerbations. Really just sort of
16 adding additional evidence from new samples at a
17 new time point that these are probably pathogenic
18 to a certain extent in those kids who are doing
19 poorly on the drug, where again we see that
20 eosinophils pathway is playing a major role in the
21 placebo exacerbations.

22 So that's all, really, just to say a lot

1 of information can be gained. I guess that's my
2 next slide, probably. So, what did we learn from
3 this? From adding molecular profiling to a
4 mepolizumab RCT in children? Well, we learned
5 that the drug works. It didn't work as well as we
6 would expect. But taking it a step further, by
7 using nasal profiling of the transcriptome, we
8 could pretty accurately identify both the
9 beneficial and deleterious responses to the drug.
10 And using some fancy machine learning approaches,
11 we can distill a lot of data down into probably a
12 handful of genes where, and this point came up
13 earlier, a combination rather than one or another,
14 give us a pretty accurate predictor of response.

15 I didn't really show this -- well, this
16 was my last point, that then, in addition, if you
17 profile during illnesses, you can understand other
18 pathways, and in particular, not to get too deep
19 into the biology, but a lot of non T2 stuff came
20 up in this analysis as being relevant to residual
21 exacerbations. And there's probably, I didn't
22 show it, but some reciprocal relationships among

1 these pathways.

2 Just to -- so, that's one example I've
3 given you. I threw this slide in over the lunch
4 break just to say it's not only in this Inner City
5 asthma study, this is a recently published
6 immunotherapy study, this is not asthma, this is
7 not kids. But just to show the same idea of nasal
8 profiling of the transcriptome, we were able to
9 understand, in effect, where tezepelumab plus
10 subcutaneous immunotherapy was or was not
11 effective and identified novel mechanisms, which
12 you see at the bottom of this graphical abstract
13 of a mass cell gene expression signature in nasal
14 brushings. And again, not to belabor the point,
15 but we've done this across a lot of different
16 studies and any of these would be good examples to
17 think about. Both the method we use, how we
18 generate our data, how we do the Omics analysis
19 towards this idea of mechanisms/biomarkers of
20 clinical response and asthma outcomes, and
21 pediatric asthma.

22 So, with that, just acknowledge this

1 work is all funded by NIAD through Inner City
2 Asthma CAUSE and or the Immune tolerance Network.
3 Dan Jackson, Jim Gern, and Bill Busse are the ones
4 who have really led that and just privileged to be
5 involved in my group in Seattle at BRI and UW who
6 do this analysis.

7 DR. HERSHEY: Thanks. Okay, our next
8 speaker in this session is Professor Mohammed
9 Shamji. He is from Imperial College in London and
10 he's a leader in respiratory allergies and how
11 disease modifying treatments affect immune
12 responses. The title of his talk, which is the
13 last in this session, is Cellular biomarkers for
14 response to AIT for respiratory allergies.

15 DR. SHAMJI: Thanks very much. This
16 doesn't seem to be my presentation. Seems like
17 Eric has jumped the hoop. Eric, shall I present
18 your talk here? So, while they're fixing the tech
19 issue, I'd just like to thank the organizers for
20 this meeting, particularly, and especially Ron,
21 for inviting me here to talk about biomarkers for
22 monitoring immunotherapy and particularly focusing

1 on cellular biomarkers. I thoroughly enjoyed the
2 meeting, the regulatory meeting, that are
3 organized in Europe by Stefan Veith. And it's
4 just nice to be invited here to have a feel of the
5 U.S. perspective.

6 So, these are my disclosures. My
7 research group is based at Imperial College in
8 London, and this is my group. And the data I'll
9 show you is generated by these team members. If
10 you happen to be in London, pop by and say hello.
11 And I've been tasked to talk to you about cellular
12 biomarkers for monitoring response to
13 immunotherapy for respiratory allergies. And now
14 I'll be focusing particularly on aero allergens
15 for this particular talk. But I might give you a
16 bit of a snapshot for food allergy as well.

17 So, allergen immunotherapy as we know
18 it, is a highly effective treatment for IgG
19 mediated diseases, particularly it is associated
20 with reduction in symptoms, need of rescue
21 medications, and improvement of quality of life.
22 But most importantly, I think as Alkis mentioned

1 it nicely, it induces immunological and clinical
2 tolerance. And what this means is that you have
3 to give it for a period of three years to be able
4 to induce tolerance. And if you don't give it for
5 three years, then you are on the road to
6 tolerance. But how do we find out? What about
7 biomarkers?

8 Well, in order to understand the
9 underpinning mechanism or the identify biomarkers,
10 we need to understand the underpinning mechanism
11 of allergic disease. And our current
12 understanding, really, is that when we think about
13 an allergic individual sensitized and allergic to
14 aeroallergen, firstly, what you see is the
15 disruption of the epithelium integrity. Where you
16 see the allergen are dissipating through. Then
17 you have the immature dendritic cells that are
18 capturing the allergens and then they migrate
19 towards the draining lymph node. They activate
20 into 9T cells into 2T to 2A cells, anti follicular
21 helper cells, and then they help V cells to
22 differentiate and proliferate into IgG producing B

1 cells. And the IgG sensitizes MAR (phonetic)
2 cells. And following allergen exposure,
3 subsequent allergen exposure, we have
4 degranulation of MAR cells and basal cells in a
5 local target organ.

6 But when you give immunotherapy over a
7 course of three years -- so when you are, in a
8 way, you are inducing immunological tolerance.
9 What you see, really, is that you have restoration
10 of the epithelial barrier integrity. So you have
11 less of the alarmins, the cytokines that drive
12 type 2 responses, such as R25, TSLP, and IL-33,
13 coming through the epithelium or activating
14 innately for cells. You have induction of
15 regulatory LC-2s. You also have induction of
16 regulatory DCs as well as regulatory T cells, the
17 FoxP3 T cells, the ALTEN inducible T cells, the
18 L-35 producing T cells. And what you have, for
19 example, L-35 has the capacity to prime B cells to
20 become regulatory B cells. And these B regs
21 produce IgG-4, but also have the capacity to
22 suppress T effector cell functions on a cell to

1 cell contact dependent manner. But also, these V
2 regs have the capacity to produce IgG-4. And if
3 we evaluate the IgG-4 that is induced following
4 immunotherapy, all it tells us is exposure in a
5 sense, but not necessarily the function. But
6 IgG-4, particularly that has high affinity, high
7 avidity, and specificity, is able to inhibit the
8 earlier phase response, such as activation of MAR
9 cell and basal cell, but also the T cell
10 responses.

11 So, you need to give immunotherapy for
12 three years. And this is an elegant study by
13 Stephen Durham that elegantly showed in 1999 that
14 you give immunotherapy for three years. What you
15 have there is, you have 36 patients at the end of
16 three years. On the right hand side, you have,
17 the top row shows the pollen count for the third
18 year and then the subsequent years. And then you
19 have the second row, symptom scores, rescue
20 medication scores, and visual analog scales. So,
21 clearly, at three years, those who received
22 immunotherapy had lower symptom scores, rescue

1 medication scores and the VAS scores were lower
2 compared to placebo.

3 But after, in the follow up group
4 particularly -- so these were randomized to either
5 be on maintenance treatment or discontinued
6 treatment, and they recruited just normal allergic
7 individuals. And clearly, those who were more
8 maintained treatment, but also discontinued
9 treatment, had lower symptom scores, rescue
10 medication scores and VAS scores. And similarly,
11 what we also see is that whether you give SCIT and
12 SLIT, if you give it for three years, you induce
13 tolerance. So, this is another randomized blind
14 placebo control trial. Steve was very much
15 involved in this. This was a European study, a
16 large study, three years of treatment in patients
17 with allergic rhinoconjunctivitis and three year
18 follow up. And clearly you can see that. So
19 three year treatment and two year follow up, and
20 you see a reduction, sustained reduction, of
21 symptoms at follow up, one year and two years.

22 So really, the key is that we know that

1 if you give treatment for three years, you induce
2 immunological tolerance. But we need to really
3 think about what's really happening in the context
4 of biomarkers. And I'd like to go over three
5 simple vignettes, in a sense. So, the first thing
6 I'd like to talk to you about how grasp on SCIT
7 and SLIT is both associated with the generation of
8 distinct subset of regulatory innately for cells.
9 How SCIT and SLIT induces, suppresses Th2A cells,
10 as well as inhibits activation of T follicle
11 helper cells and induces T reg cells.

12 And finally, what I would like to do,
13 rather than just focusing on biomarkers of
14 tolerance or biomarkers of efficacy, I'd like to
15 highlight how we can use biomarkers to actually
16 think of a novel approach of immunotherapy, in
17 particularly thinking about depictment polymer as
18 grass pollen extracts for immunotherapy. So,
19 innately lymph cells are immune cells that belong
20 to the lineage negative cells, negative lymphoid
21 cells, and lack T cell receptor, and play an
22 important role in immune hemostasis, infections

1 against microorganisms, but also play an important
2 role in chronic type 2 inflammation that can be
3 grouped into three subsets. So, ILC-1s, ILC-2s,
4 and ILC-3s. And ILC-2s particularly responds to
5 TSLP, IL-33 and IL-25, and secrete a lot of
6 cytokines, particularly type 2 cytokines like IL-4
7 and IL-5, particularly 5 and 13.

8 And what we had done several years ago,
9 we monitored the frequency of ILC-2s in grass
10 pollen allergic individuals in and out of the
11 pollen season and those who received
12 immunotherapy. And we were able to demonstrate
13 that in the immunotherapy treated patients there
14 were a blunting of the increases in ILC-2s during
15 the pollen season, while in the allergic
16 individuals there was a clear high frequency of
17 ILC- 2s. And the question then was what was
18 regulating at the innate immune compartment? What
19 were the regulatory mechanisms? Is there
20 induction of ILC-2s that have regulatory capacity?
21 So we were very much interested in looking at IL
22 ILC-2s that produce IL-10 and whether they have

1 the capacity to regulate innate immune responses
2 at the local target organ. But as a surrogate, we
3 looked in periphery.

4 So we were able to generate ILC-10
5 producing ILCs in the lab. And the way you do
6 that, you purify ILCs from peripheral blood, more
7 nuclear cells. You stimulate with RA27 and 33 and
8 you stimulate them with a retinoic acid. And what
9 you see is that you then look at the population of
10 lineage negative cells that are RCD-127 positive
11 and look at a double positive that CRTH2 positive
12 and KLRG1 positive.

13 But because we do 18 color or 36 color,
14 flow cytometry it's very difficult to really be
15 objective about the way we do these analysis. And
16 one way we did is we use unbiased machine learning
17 algorithm analysis for visualization, where we
18 reduce the dimensionality into 2-D of all the
19 parameters. So, each dot represent a cell and the
20 cells that are close to one another are more
21 likely to be expressing the same marker.

22 So you have, firstly, you have, in the

1 absence of retinoic acid, we're looking at CRTH2,
2 KLRG1, and IL-10. And in the presence, what you
3 see is the red dot flacking in the area of CRTH2,
4 but predominantly KLRG, and there is a small
5 island where you can see the IL-10s. And if you
6 look at the bottom, what you see here is that you
7 only see induction of ALTEN producing ILCs in the
8 cells that have been stimulated to retinoic acid
9 and are typically expressing KLRG1. And you can
10 measure protein expression of IL-10 over the
11 course of 8 days in a time dependent manner. You
12 can also take the cells and throw them in the air
13 and they fall like a tree. And then you can look
14 at individual node and the PI (phonetic) represent
15 the expression of the markers. And we were able
16 to identify, so this called flosum (phonetic),
17 we're able to identify two meta classes,
18 particularly meta classes 6 and 10, that were
19 flagged in the presence of retinoic acid as a mark
20 of whether the cells had the capacity to produce
21 IL-10. And you can see increase in abundance in
22 the meta classes 6 and 10, but also expression of

1 IL-10.

2 So, the most important thing is so what
3 we're seeing, we're able to generate IL-10
4 producing ILCs in vitro, but so what? So, we
5 recruited non-atopic controls. Cross-pollen
6 allergic individuals and patients received
7 immunotherapy during the pollen season and were
8 able to look at evaluate the frequency of these
9 IL-10 producing ILCs. These were clearly
10 dysregulated in a grass pollan allergic
11 individual, so lower proportion compared to
12 non-atopic controls and somewhat restored
13 following subcutaneous immunotherapy, to our
14 surprise. We've done a lot of studies and looked
15 at several correlations, but we were able to see a
16 modest correlation of symptom scores versus the
17 proportion of IL-10 producing ILCs, an inverse
18 correlation which was reproduced in a context of
19 symptom scores, but also VAS scores as well.

20 We went on to validate this into a
21 randomized double blind placebo controlled trial
22 with sublingual immunotherapy. I had a fellow who

1 came from Switzerland, we worked very closely
2 together with Steve, and performed a randomized
3 trial on sublingual immunotherapy. So this was
4 initially a 12 month study, placebo and active.
5 Patient received treatment for a course of 12
6 months and then they were followed up for up to 24
7 months in the actively treated group. So at
8 baseline, if you look at the TNSS for placebo and
9 SLIT, they match at baseline. And at 12 months
10 there was a reduction in the TNSS area under the
11 curve measured by -- so this is TNSS measurement
12 of TNSS after nasal allergen challenge at 12
13 months, or at baseline, and we looked at the
14 proportion of IL-10 producing ILC2s. So, these
15 remained very much unchanged in the placebo group
16 between 9 and 12 months, but somewhat they were
17 elevated in the actively treated group. So, we
18 also looked at the association between the TNSS
19 scores as well as the frequency of these IL-10
20 producing ILC, but the level of IL-10 that we're
21 secreting. So, we're able to demonstrate a linear
22 inverse correlation between IL-10 producing ILC2s

1 and the TNSS scores, as well as the levels of
2 IL-10.

3 So what we're able to really do here, to
4 really have a look at first glance, what happens
5 right beneath the epithelium and where are the
6 underpinning mechanism that we're seeing following
7 immunotherapy and whether we could have a very
8 nice biomarkers. Where ILC2s they, initially,
9 they come from ILC precursors, an express CD117,
10 and they can differentiate into an NKp46 or KLRG1,
11 immature ILC2s, which has the capacity to become
12 ILC2 when exposed to TSLP, and IL-

13 Or IL-10-producing ILCs when it's
14 exposed to IL-7, IL-33, and retinoic acid. And
15 we're able to demonstrate in this particular study
16 that there was a clear dysregulation of these
17 IL-10 producing ILCs in allergic individuals,
18 which was somewhat restored following grass pollen
19 immunotherapy, SCIT and SLIT. We did a lot of
20 functional data analysis where we were able to
21 look at the capacity to restore epithelium
22 integrity, how they can suppress Th2 effector

1 cells, and also highlight their potential use as
2 potential biomarkers. And we're currently
3 validating this in the large studies.

4 Secondly, what I would like to
5 highlight, when we think about cellular responses,
6 well, Th2 responses are prominent in allergic
7 disease. And so what happens following SCIT and
8 SLIT? Well, in an elegant study, again, this was
9 a study that was funded by ITN and NIH, and Steve
10 was the primary investigator, it was a randomized
11 blind placebo control trial of SCIT and SLIT
12 single center study 100 and we had 36 patients in
13 the active arm SCIT, 34 in the placebo, and 36 in
14 the SLIT group. But this was a way of comparing
15 SCIT versus SLIT in the same group, a single
16 center study. So, it was a 1 year study and 1
17 year of treatment. And at baseline, we performed
18 intranasal allergen challenge, collected TNSS
19 scores, during the pollen season we collected
20 symptom scores, rescue medication scores, quality
21 of life scores. And we did this at baseline, year
22 1 year 2, and we stopped treatment and followed

1 them up for year 3.

2 And if what you can see here in the
3 TNSS, if we look at the TNSS score, this is data
4 that (inaudible) actually generated. And it was
5 very nice to see that what you see here, at year 1
6 and year 2, SCIT and SLIT are associated with
7 reduction in TNSS. But at year 3 we lose that
8 effect. And we also had a placebo effect. But
9 when we looked at the total nasal symptom scores,
10 a change in increase for both SCIT and SLIT at
11 year 1, year 2, and this effect was lost and the
12 placebo remained pretty much the same. But the
13 key point here is that it's very difficult to come
14 across the studies where you have response and no
15 response. So, it was really good to be able to
16 have a study that, where we can actually really
17 look at the certain biomarkers in collaboration
18 with Bill Clark and Eric. What we did is we
19 looked at the frequency of Th2A cells. And if I
20 just get you to focus on the top right panel, what
21 you see is that SCIT and SLIT had reduction in Th2
22 cells at year 1, year 2, and we lost that effect

1 at year 3. So again, mirroring similar to what we
2 saw with the total nasal symptom scores.

3 We tend to focus about T cells,
4 particularly Th2 cells, IL-4, IL-5 producing
5 cells. But we tend to forget about the cells that
6 are really important in driving IgE responses.
7 And T follicular helper cells are critical in
8 helping B cells to differentiate into an antibody
9 producing cells. T follicular helper cells are T
10 cells that express CD4, CXCR5 and PD-1. And in
11 order for them to differentiate into a Tfh cell,
12 they need to interact with dendritic cells and
13 they require particular signals such as IL-12,
14 IL-27, IL-6. And these signals provide a
15 downstream activation of stat 3 and stat 4, which
16 allows them to express IL-21, CXCR 5, and PD-1.
17 And IL-21 is critical for helping B cells to
18 differentiate and switch into an antibody
19 producing cell. So it's very crucial. And when
20 you have a combination of IL-4 and IL-21, you have
21 a huge boost of IgE. And this is an experiment
22 that illustrates this, where you can culture

1 peripheral but more nuclear cells, stimulate the
2 cells with IL-4, IL-21, and CD40 ligand. But when
3 you have a combination of IL-4 and IL-21, you have
4 a massive boost of IgE that is produced in vitro.

5 So, we performed a cross-sectional
6 study, a cross-sectional study where we recruited
7 non-atopic controls, untreated grass pollen
8 allergies, SCIT and SLIT treated patients. This
9 was a pilot study, a small core study, and these
10 are the patient demographics on how we selected
11 our patients. And we looked at the rhinitis total
12 symptoms scores during the pollen season. What
13 you can see here is the treated group, SCIT and
14 SLIT, have lower RTS compared to the allergics.
15 The non-atopic controls are behaving themselves.
16 Then you have the IL-21 producing cells are
17 elevated in the grass bone allergic compared to
18 non-atopic control, but somewhat restored in SCIT
19 and SLIT treated patients. And we also looked at
20 the cells that regulate Tfh cells. These are
21 Foxp3 TFR cells, and there are somewhat the
22 reverse where they were lower in the grass pollen

1 allergic individuals compared to non-atopic
2 controls and somewhat induced following in the
3 treated group, SCIT and SLIT.

4 So, what about the evidence of IL-21 in
5 the nasal fluid? So, this patient had underwent
6 intranasal allergen challenge with collected nasal
7 fluid. And we looked at IL-4, IL-6, IL- 21, IL-6,
8 particularly because IL-6 drives IL-21. But we're
9 also very keen to look at the combination of IL-4
10 and IL-21. And these were increased in a time
11 dependent manner in the allergic group and somehow
12 had inhibited in the SCIT and SLIT treated group
13 and not much in the non-atopic individuals. We
14 went on to do a lot of analysis, including ataxic,
15 looking at the epigenetic effects of SCIT and SLIT
16 at the chromosome level in the Tfh cells and T
17 follicular regulatory cells. And what you see
18 here on the left, firstly, in Tfh cells there's
19 more accessibility in the chromatin region, in
20 particularly allowing expression of IL-4, IL-21,
21 IL6, and less in the Tfh so that they have
22 restriction in terms of functionality. And on the

1 right, this is reverse where they are much more
2 functional and the Tfh have much more, less,
3 chromatin accessibility and unable to produce more
4 IL-4, IL-21.

5 So, this is what we know in terms of the
6 underpinning mechanisms of when we are moving
7 towards induction of tolerance, we influence the
8 innate immune compartment by induction of IL-10
9 producing regulatory cells. We are dampening Th2
10 cells, Th2A cells, and modulating T follicular
11 helper cells by inducing T follicular regulatory
12 cells.

13 But how can we use biomarkers in terms
14 of thinking of using and identifying a candidate
15 that will be able to induce tolerance when we use
16 it for immunotherapy? I won't go much into this
17 detail, but I think it's important to highlight
18 that when we think about biomarkers, they're not
19 just for diagnostic or prognostic, but we can use
20 them for drug development. And I think it's a
21 very nice way of being able to understand by
22 performing basic research and really identify the

1 relevant key molecules, and how we can think about
2 understanding the mode of action, whether there
3 can be a therapeutic target. Can we use them in
4 pre-clinical studies? Can we use them for
5 stratification of patients? Can we use them later
6 on for qualification in terms of relevant
7 biomarkers for validation and use for clinical
8 trial, but also real world evidence studies or in
9 a clinical practice?

10 So, here's an example, thinking about
11 optimizing allergoids as a novel approach for
12 immunotherapy. And this is really a way of using
13 a larger molecule that is unable to activate T
14 cells or Th2 cells particularly. And what one can
15 do is purified -- you use an extract which
16 undergoes a mild acid treatment. It can become
17 depegmented, can be polymerized, chemically
18 polymerized. One can look at the IgE binding and
19 look at, particularly the epitope, where you have
20 IgG binding. And we had one candidate, that as
21 you can see, in the native flip the top row, you
22 have the various different epitope, IgE epitopes.

1 This is reduced when you depigment it and when you
2 undergoes polymerization you have less IgE
3 epitopes, but the IgE epitopes remain the same.
4 You can use basophil activation to look at
5 reactivity or activation of basophils and select
6 the candidate that is a little bit more
7 hypoallergenic.

8 And what we did is we performed
9 single-cell analysis, RNA-Seq, in three patients
10 and we're able to demonstrate by the power of
11 using single cell transcriptomics. We were able
12 to demonstrate that the polymerized Depigoid
13 molecule was able to reduce regulate IL-4, IL-10
14 pathway, suppress antigen presentation, induce
15 regulatory T cells that express CD-52 and express
16 their functionality towards Siglec-10. And then
17 we validated this in in-vitro study with 16 grass
18 pollen allergics and 12 non-atopic control to be
19 able to demonstrate that they were the right
20 candidates and they were unable to stimulate Th2
21 cells, Tfh cells, but they were prominent inducing
22 B regulatory cells and T-regs but also were

1 hypoallergenic.

2 And I think what we were able to really
3 do here is demonstrate that you can use biomarkers
4 to also select the relevant candidate that one can
5 use for immunotherapy. I think we're also doing
6 similar in a context of using virus like particles
7 expressing peanut and moving into the peanut
8 allergy field. And we have some very elegant data
9 showing reduction of basophil activation, IgE
10 mediated, Th2 activation, Tfh2 cell responses Tfh
11 follicular regulatory induction, IL-10 producing B
12 cell induction, and Tfh1 responses.

13 I think with that, I would like to just
14 acknowledge the team that have worked towards the
15 data I've generated you. But I just want to just
16 leave you with a thought. I think we are at the
17 stage where we have access to all this wonderful
18 -omic technology, but also we are thin the era
19 where we can use a lot of informatics to make
20 sense of what we're doing. And I think what we
21 need to do is to think about our patients, how
22 heterogeneous they are, put them through the

1 relevant pipelines where we can do a lot of
2 measurements, and do the relevant data sign that's
3 validated to be able to identify responders,
4 non-responders, and low responses. And I think
5 this is really the way forward.

6 And just on the last slide, what I would
7 just like to highlight here is that what we need,
8 really, is to think about biomarkers of
9 desensitization, efficacy, and tolerance. And we
10 need to really think about whether it's for SCIT
11 or whether it's for SLIT, or whether it's for
12 modified allergen. We should be really putting
13 them into one pot.

14 And finally, I'd like to invite you all
15 to Valencia, where we have the European Academy
16 meeting, and hope to see you there. Thank you.

17 DR. HERSHEY: Matt, Sally. Dr.
18 Hamilton, if you have any questions, just please
19 move to the microphone. One of the microphones.

20 DR. KRISHNAN: Gary Krishnan, from Eli
21 Lilly. This is a question for Dr. Altman. Really
22 enjoyed your talk. Have you pressure tested the

1 reliability of your thresholds in your models
2 using prospective studies? Especially when it
3 comes to gene expression, which in individual
4 patients varies quite a bit.

5 DR. ALTMAN: Yeah, no, it's a very good
6 question. We have certainly not pressure tested
7 anything to the point of saying this is a
8 clinically reliable test that we would implement
9 in a study. As to that sort of variability over
10 time, I mean, we've used these exact approaches
11 and these genes and these modules now across
12 multiple studies and have seen really a very
13 consistent pattern. We don't have another
14 mepolizumab RCT, you know, to sort of fully
15 validate it. We are currently validating the
16 utility of some of those genes in observational
17 cohorts to look at just exacerbation rates in
18 general. So, you know it's a work in progress.
19 But as with anything, you would want truly
20 external validation to generalize the result.

21 DR. HERSHEY: Any other questions?

22 DR. RABIN: There was one virtual

1 question for Dr. Hamilton. A questioner wanted
2 to know whether or not it was worthwhile in the
3 context of some reports that there's IgE against
4 several viral antigens, like RV and such, and
5 whether or not it would be worthwhile to add that
6 to a multiplex cartridge such as the one you spoke
7 about?

8 DR. HAMILTON: I don't think that's ever
9 been raised before, actually. And we've talked
10 about alpha-gal and a whole, and a whole host of
11 other allergens, but never viral antigens or
12 allergens. Good question.

13 DR. HERSHEY: Wayne? DR. Shreffler:
14 Hi, so, question for Dr.

15 Shamji. Mo, do you have a sense of the
16 relative contribution of IL-10 from this ILC
17 population versus adaptive T cells or other
18 sources?

19 DR. SHAMJI: Yes.

20 DR. SHREFFLER: In the context of, you
21 know, allergen IT?

22 DR. SHAMJI: It certainly, we've done

1 comparative analysis where we've stimulated RCs,
2 purified RCs, with RA and IL-7 and IL-33, and also
3 stimulated B reg with CpG and CD40 ligand. Sorry,
4 my asthma is kicking in a little bit. My voice is
5 coming down --

6 DR. SHREFFLER: We'll get you a lozenge.

7 DR. SHAMJI: -- while talking about the
8 relevant topic. Sally, maybe you can help? But
9 the point being is that pound for pound, they
10 produce a lot of IL-10, and they have the capacity
11 to sort of support the epithelial integrity in
12 terms of, you know, induction of IL-1 and so on.
13 So certainly, they do have not only the capacity
14 to suppress Th2 cells, they produce a lot of the
15 IL-10 concentration is really high, but also
16 helping the epithelial cell integrity
17 regeneration.

18 DR. HERSHEY: Lady in the back?

19 QUESTIONER: This is a question for Dr.
20 Hamilton. Dr. Hamilton, this new ALEX technology
21 that you showed was very interesting. Do you
22 think that we will ever be at the point where

1 those of us who order serum specific IgE testing
2 for foods will actually get a result that says
3 something other than just greater than 100? And
4 do you think otherwise that this is something that
5 we should be talking about thinking about?

6 DR. HAMILTON: So, your question is
7 whether laboratories will ever report greater than
8 100 kilo international units of allergen specific
9 IgE? Do you find levels above 100 to be
10 clinically useful?

11 QUESTIONER: Well, I don't know. I've
12 never had them, so I haven't had the opportunity.
13 But I like that I get a total serum IgE, and I do
14 wonder sometimes if my level were 102 versus
15 10,000 if I wouldn't do something different with
16 that.

17 DR. HAMILTON: Well, it's a very good
18 question. We actually, in the clinical lab that I
19 run, do titer out all serum above 100 to the level
20 by doing a dilution analysis. So we actually do
21 that. But in reviewing the College of American
22 Pathology Proficiency survey data, very few

1 laboratories do that. In fact, I'm still
2 surprised that there are many labs still reporting
3 in class units which we've tried to eliminate.
4 So, it's a very good question. Thank you very
5 much.

6 DR. HERSHEY: Dr. Drazen?

7 DR. DRAZEN: Jeff Drazen from Boston.
8 For the biomarkers to be useful they need to be
9 reasonably repeatable. And I think reasonable
10 idea that IgE is reasonably repeatable within an
11 individual over relatively short periods of time.
12 But of the other biomarkers we've talked about,
13 Sally mentioned in, and you mentioned, about the
14 variability. How do we deal with this variability
15 within a given patient? Because we're going to
16 label a patient. Do we label them as low all the
17 time, high all the time, or somebody who jumps
18 around in that middle group? It's not going to be
19 terribly clinically useful. So how do we
20 categorize the repeatability? How do we use it to
21 our advantage or understand it to our
22 disadvantage?

1 DR. WENZEL: Jeff, as always, that's a
2 great question. You know, I think we use it to
3 our advantage. The noise is often where the
4 signal is. You just have to look for it. And we
5 published a paper in SARP, we actually published
6 now a couple of papers, looking at variability of
7 FeNO and variability of sputum eosinophils and
8 sputum neutrophils, and, you know, those that are
9 persistently low, persistently high, and the ones
10 that wiggle around. And interestingly, probably
11 the most intriguing ones are the ones that are
12 changing, and they seem to have some of the worst
13 symptoms, the more exacerbations, et cetera. And,
14 you know, I think it's because it is contextual,
15 right? That if you had a virus a month ago or if
16 you were treated, you decided to become more
17 adherent to your corticosteroids over the last two
18 days because you knew you were seeing the doctor.
19 You know, all those sorts of things can influence
20 the variability. And I think those patterns of
21 behavior may be part of it. And then your
22 environmental exposures are obviously going to

1 vary, too. But the noise is actually probably
2 where some of the most important exacerbation and
3 severe patients lie. The noisy ones.

4 DR. HERSHEY: Matt, did you want to say
5 something?

6 DR. ALTMAN: Well, I would second that.
7 On the one hand, it makes it tough to actually
8 come up with drugs and clinically treat because,
9 you know, asthma is variable over the course of
10 the year, it's variable over time. We've seen in
11 our studies that your transcriptome state in the
12 nose, at a given point, sort of predicts the time
13 to your next exacerbation. So, they're at risk
14 periods. And for example, we see in kids in the
15 fall, those who have a low interferon basal tone
16 are the ones who exacerbate that fall. So, you
17 know, that makes it tricky because you treat them
18 with a certain drug at that point in time and then
19 a different one at a different point, that all
20 gets muddy.

21 But there's real data, there's real
22 information, within that variability if you know

1 how to look at it, you know. So, I think it's
2 important that we understand that. We're doing a
3 study now where we're looking at T2-high and
4 T2-low, and surveying throughout the course of the
5 year, to better understand that variability and
6 how it relates to types of exacerbations.

7 DR. WENZEL: And I'll just add one other
8 thing. So, I showed the data about pheno and
9 blood eosinophils. That was one measurement. But
10 it seemed with that one measurement to predict
11 things 3 years and 4 years down the line. So, a
12 single measurement was actually pretty good. But
13 I think we, as a collective, should come up with
14 some standards that to actually know whether
15 somebody is high eosinophils or not, you need to
16 measure it three times. I think a single
17 measurement is probably not enough. You need to
18 measure exhaled nitric oxide three different times
19 and three different occasions. But if you pass
20 the ceiling, whatever that ceiling ends up being,
21 you have that background. I actually pretty
22 strongly believe that. That that background of

1 type 2-ness, whatever we want to call it, is there
2 and doesn't go away. I've never seen it go away
3 with.

4 DR. SHAMJI: Biomarkers to assess
5 immunological tolerance, for example, following
6 immunotherapy. What we always do is you start
7 with optimization validation, analytical
8 validation in a pilot study and then you take it
9 into a clinical study, and only when that's
10 reproducible and informative. Then the key then
11 is to take it forward for qualification. And the
12 key element here is, you know -- the graph that I
13 showed in terms of mechanism, all the work we've
14 done in terms of T cells, B cells, RC-2s, and so
15 on, in terms of reproducibility, they are
16 reproducible and they can be done by independent
17 operators. And if you think about the differences
18 between in small pilot study, starting with
19 atopics and non-atopics, before we actually
20 evaluate in treated group, the concept is to
21 always think of a pilot study where you're
22 optimizing and validating these biomarkers. Then,

1 you can then take them into a clinical study to
2 validate them, prior to valid qualification.

3 DR. HERSHEY: Thank you. Next.

4 DR. ORTEGA: Hi, and Hector Ortega, San
5 Diego. And I was interested, Sally, in the
6 comment about IL-6 and recognizing there is a
7 major gap on the non-type 2 biomarkers. And do we
8 know if the elevated IL-5 is, I mean IL-6, is
9 correlated with the low response on the drugs that
10 are now used biologics for all commerce, like
11 tezepelumab or even dupilumab? And that's one
12 comment. But also, probably this workshop should
13 be an incentive to look for additional biomarkers
14 in the non-type 2.

15 DR. WENZEL: Yeah, no, I don't know
16 whether it's a predictor of response to type 2
17 biologics. Like I said, it's fascinating. It's
18 there in everyone. It is completely independent
19 of type 2 biomarkers. But if you look at the
20 people that have type 2 high inflammation, and you
21 start them on whatever your biologic of choice, is
22 there a difference in response? We can look at

1 that in SARP. We have not done that yet, but we
2 can look at that in a pretty rigorous way. So,
3 thank you for that suggestion.

4 DR. HERSHEY: I have one question while
5 we're waiting for this lady to come up. I have
6 one question for our panel. We heard from several
7 of you biomarkers at different tissues, right.
8 And I think it's becoming increasingly evident
9 that allergic diseases are systemic. They
10 manifest in the blood, right, with the immune
11 responses, and they manifest locally. And I just
12 wonder what you think about that in terms of the
13 future biomarkers. I mean, are we going to need
14 -- Matt showed how we had to use two or three
15 different genes, and Sally presented some
16 examples. And I wonder how we're going to really
17 think about this collectively and bring it.

18 DR. ALTMAN: I mean, I can tell you, I
19 appreciate that comment. That, you know,
20 systemic, and we can measure things in the blood.
21 I mean, my bias from a lot of data sets now is
22 that, and we kind of heard this earlier, looking

1 in the airway, and we're lucky, and that we can
2 conveniently sample the airway. I mean, upper
3 airway at least. The signals are much more robust
4 there in all of our data sets. There are things
5 that you see in the blood. Some of them are
6 genetic, you know, some of them are not.

7 Interferon is a classic example where you can see
8 sort of basal interferon tone well in the blood.
9 But I think a lot of these tissues eosinophils,
10 tissue epithelial things show up better in a nasal
11 sample. So, I'm certainly a proponent of that.
12 But we're always going to look at both and see how
13 they associate to one another, or at least that's
14 what we're doing in our studies.

15 DR. HERSHEY: I think with skin types we
16 might have even more that we can add in.

17 DR. WENZEL: And I would just add, I
18 think there could be differences in children and
19 adults with this, too. That, I think I'm
20 hypothesizing here, that childhood disease could
21 be more target organ focused. But as you go on
22 with longer duration of the disease, more

1 environmental exposures, et cetera, it could
2 become more systemic. And I will say, that the
3 IL-6 in the blood has zero connection with
4 literally any gene expression in the lungs, in
5 sputum, or in epithelial brushings. So, it's a
6 completely separate compartment, which we don't
7 understand at all, to be quite honest with you.

8 DR. HERSHEY: Interesting. Did you have
9 anything you want to add?

10 DR. SHAMJI: Just to echo what Martin
11 and Sally mentioned, really an integrated approach
12 of looking at the local target organ with all of
13 the novel technologies we have. Looking at, for
14 example, proteomics with oiling, looking at
15 special transcriptomic with the signal cell
16 approach, I think it's only going to tell us more
17 about the underpinning mechanisms and the
18 immunological response. We can then take that to
19 translate into relevant biomarkers.

20 DR. HERSHEY: Thank you. Last question.

21 DR. TRIPATHI: Hi, Anubha Tripathi, FDA
22 CBER. Thank you all for your talks. This

1 question is really directed at any of you, but,
2 Dr. Hamilton, you first touched upon it, and then
3 Dr. Shamji touched upon it. I think as your last
4 slide, you talked about the Raven AI software, and
5 I was just wondering if you can -- or with the
6 multiplex. Did I get that right? I was just
7 wondering what your experience is with that? And
8 I guess, along the lines of what we're discussing
9 today, how you see that working into perhaps the
10 biomarker discussion.

11 DR. HAMILTON: So where does the
12 multiplex fit into the future of diagnostic?

13 DR. TRIPATHI: Well, you actually, on
14 your last slide, you talked about using Raven AI
15 software.

16 DR. HAMILTON: Oh, right. Yes. So, one
17 of the problems with having data from 300 allergen
18 specificities is that it's extremely overwhelming.
19 So, we're fortunate that computer AI has
20 simplified it by not only allowing us to analyze
21 those data quickly, but also provide general
22 interpretations based on the allergenic profiles.

1 And what's very nice is that you get information
2 about cross-reactivity and suspected or expected
3 symptoms, that in fact may relate to cross
4 reactive allergenic of families that we wouldn't
5 really know.

6 In the United States, allergists are not
7 really well versed in the details of molecular
8 allergology like they are in Europe. Because
9 actually most of this actually grew up in Europe.
10 Most of the molecular allergens. That's why the
11 major companies that are producing these multiplex
12 components based assays are actually in Europe.
13 So, we have an educational gap here in the United
14 States, I view, which we have to fill, and we can
15 fill that by AI programs that allow us to get some
16 general interpretations of data, both for extract
17 and component reactivity.

18 So, I see the transition of serologic
19 measurements of IgE antibody in the United States,
20 and the world, transitioning from the singleplex
21 assay to a multiplex technology, because multiplex
22 technology is the only cost effective way for us

1 to actually get measurements to components.
2 Otherwise, it just can't be done. So, I don't
3 know if I addressed your question or not.

4 DR. TRIPATHI: Well, my question was,
5 what is your experience with, how does the -- so,
6 that's what the Raven AI software does, is put
7 together cross reactive and then symptoms, and
8 then the physician checks? Is that what you --
9 what's the readout that you get?

10 DR. HAMILTON: Yeah, the readout is
11 actually an interpretation, providing profiles of
12 symptomatology based on the allergenic profiles
13 that might be expected to be seen. For example,
14 in the case of profilin, the one case I presented,
15 the child may very well have an oral allergy
16 symptom to melon, even though their primary
17 sensitivity is to birch pollen due to Bet v 1 one
18 cross-reactivity -- or Bet v 2 cross-reactivity,
19 sorry. So that type of interpretation is very
20 helpful as a starter, but ultimately comes down to
21 the allergist ability to actually interpret the
22 data. And that requires knowledge about the

1 clinical utility of the allergenic components.
2 And that's not as trivial as we would like to
3 think, unfortunately.

4 DR. TRIPATHI: Right. And I was just
5 wondering, Dr. Shamji, you mentioned it as well,
6 have you used machine deep learning in your?

7 DR. SHAMJI: Yeah, thanks for asking.
8 Actually, we are. We are using a lot of machine
9 learning algorithms and working with
10 bioinformatician to really data mine studies from
11 clinical trials, real world evidence studies, and
12 so on. So, it's really, it's early stage because
13 the thing is, the output, the key is how do we
14 integrate the data nicely to make good sense of
15 it. And actually, even if we do and we have some
16 interesting data clusters, we do need to validate
17 them into real clusters because otherwise we are
18 only talking about virtual clusters. So, I think
19 we have to go through the process and then we have
20 to be very thorough in terms of really looking at
21 the data. But thank you.

22 DR. TRIPATHI: Thank you.

1 DR. HERSHEY: All right. Join me in
2 thanking all of our speakers. We're going to take
3 a 15 minute break. We'll reconvene at 2:35. Thank
4 you.

5 (Recess)

6 DR. TOGIAS: Might be time to take a
7 seat so that we move to session three. And this
8 session is entitled Biomarkers in Food Allergy and
9 those who were not earlier here today, my name is
10 Alkis Togias from NIAID, and we have a number of
11 speakers, starting with my dear colleague.

12 SPEAKER: This meeting is being
13 recorded.

14 DR. TOGIAS: Pam Guerrerio is Director
15 and Chief of the Laboratory of Allergic Diseases
16 in the Division of Intramural Research at NIAID.
17 She graduated the medical scientist training
18 program at Johns Hopkins University and completed
19 medical school and a PhD in human genetics and did
20 her residency and all the good things there. And
21 now she's going to talk to us. The title is food
22 allergy, risk factors and current clinical

1 endpoints for efficacy. Pam?

2 DR. GUERRERIO: Thank you, Alkis, and
3 good afternoon, everybody. It's been a great
4 session so far, so thank you to the organizers for
5 the opportunity to present and be part of this is
6 it this.

7 All right. As Alkis mentioned, I'm
8 going to discuss two topics today. First, known
9 risk factors for food allergy, and then second,
10 clinical endpoints that can be used to assess the
11 efficacy of treatments for food allergy. I have
12 no conflicts of interest.

13 The tremendous increase in the
14 prevalence of allergic diseases over the last few
15 decades has raised a lot of interest in the
16 factors that account for this. At this point, the
17 pathogenesis of food allergy is thought to involve
18 both a genetic predisposition as well as exposure
19 to triggers in the environment. One way to ask
20 whether genetics contributes to a disease is to
21 ask whether that disease tends to run in families,
22 and twin studies can be especially helpful in this

1 regard, since twins share many of the same
2 environmental exposures and also the same in utero
3 environment. Several years ago, it was showed
4 that the concordance rate for food allergy among
5 identical twins who share 100 percent of their DNA
6 was 82 percent, compared to only 20 percent for
7 fraternal twins, who only share half of their
8 genes.

9 Another study found that children who
10 have a parent or a sibling with peanut allergy are
11 seven times more likely to be allergic to peanut
12 than children who have no family history.
13 Overall, the heritability of food allergy is
14 estimated to be about 80 percent. Using a number
15 of different approaches, variants in several genes
16 have been identified and consistently associated
17 with food allergy. These include the HLA genes,
18 which are involved in how food allergens are
19 presented to the immune system; CD14, which
20 encodes the co- receptor for lipopolysaccharide, a
21 component of bacterial cell walls; the Th2
22 cytokine IL-13 STAT6, which is a transcriptions

1 factor downstream of the Th2 cytokines; and then
2 variants in filaggrin, SPINK5, and other genes
3 important in the skin barrier function have also
4 been linked to food allergy.

5 However, it's important to note that all
6 of these studies have only detected associations
7 between these genetic variants and food allergy,
8 and they don't necessarily imply that any of these
9 genetic changes on their own would be sufficient
10 to cause food allergy. The sharp increase in food
11 allergy prevalence over a relatively short period
12 of time suggests that genes are not the whole
13 story. Our gene pool just doesn't change that
14 quickly. And so, there's good evidence that there
15 are several other risk factors for food allergy,
16 including male sex, race, and ethnicity.

17 Food allergy is about twice as common in
18 males than females, and there's some evidence
19 males have more severe reactions as well.
20 Interestingly, this changes during adolescence
21 when food allergy becomes more common in females.
22 There's also some studies suggesting that

1 sensitization to food allergens, and perhaps even
2 food allergy itself, is more common among Asian,
3 Black and Hispanic individuals than those of
4 European ancestry.

5 Epidemiologically, there have been
6 multiple studies suggesting that vitamin D
7 insufficiency is an important risk factor for food
8 allergy. Several groups have shown that infants
9 who are born in the fall and winter months are at
10 higher risk for food allergy than those that are
11 born in the spring and summer when there's greater
12 UV light exposure. Other studies have found that
13 the number of hospital admissions for allergic
14 reactions to food and the number of prescriptions
15 for epinephrine autoinjectors increases the
16 farther you go from the equator, and that
17 relationship held true independent of longitude.

18 But some of the best evidence actually
19 came out of the HealthNet study from Australia
20 that looked at over 5,000 infants. And here they
21 found that those infants who were low in vitamin D
22 were 12 times more likely to develop peanut

1 allergy than infants who had normal vitamin D
2 levels. There's also been some interesting data
3 suggesting that the increased use of ant acids,
4 especially during infancy, may be contributing to
5 this rise in food allergy.

6 Under normal circumstances, stomach
7 acids reduce the allergenicity of food proteins by
8 denaturing the protein and breaking it down.
9 Under normal circumstances, about 2 percent of
10 food proteins are absorbed into the systemic
11 circulation. There was a study done actually
12 several decades ago that showed adults who were
13 treated with these antiulcer medications actually
14 developed new sensitization to food allergens,
15 although the clinical significance of that wasn't
16 clear.

17 More recently, Ed Mitre and colleagues
18 reported a retrospective cohort study where they
19 looked at over 800,000 infants who were enrolled
20 in the military healthcare system. The study
21 included about an equal number of boys and girls.
22 They reported that 7.6 percent had been prescribed

1 a histamine-2 receptor antagonist, and 1.7 percent
2 a PPI, a proton pump inhibitor, during their first
3 year of life.

4 They showed that infants who received
5 either of these medications were over two times
6 more likely to have food allergy than infants who
7 didn't receive these drugs. Now, again, this
8 study is only detecting an association. It
9 doesn't necessarily mean that use of these
10 medications is causing food allergy, but it does
11 suggest that these medications may not be
12 completely benign.

13 One of the more popular theories to
14 explain the rise in food allergy is called the
15 hygiene hypothesis. And this essentially posits
16 that we are keeping infants too clean and that by
17 not exposing them to germs, their immune system
18 isn't developing properly and they're starting to
19 react against innocuous antigens in the
20 environment, such as food antigens. So, what is
21 the evidence for this? We know that the
22 prevalence of allergic disease is lower in less

1 developed countries that lack adequate sanitation
2 and a clean water supply. And these countries
3 often experience a concomitant increase in the
4 prevalence of allergic disease as their countries
5 become more westernized. Children who have close
6 contact with animals, either because they grew up
7 on a farm or they have a pet at home, especially a
8 dog, seem to be protected. Children who have
9 multiple older siblings also seem to be at lower
10 risk. And then there are some birth cohort
11 studies, but not all have shown that infants who
12 are born by caesarean section are more likely to
13 have challenged proven food allergy.

14 One way all those exposures might be
15 influencing the risk of food allergy is by
16 changing the microbiome. There is now really
17 quite a tremendous body of data suggesting that
18 dysbiosis early in life is playing a very
19 important role in the pathogenesis of food
20 allergy. From an epidemiologic standpoint, we
21 know that use of antibiotics during pregnancy or
22 in infants during the first month of life was

1 associated with a higher risk of cow's milk
2 allergy. Other studies have found that the levels
3 of triclosan, which is a very common antibacterial
4 agent found in hundreds of household products, was
5 higher in the urine of children who were
6 sensitized to food and environmental allergens.
7 And then germ-free mice or mice that have been
8 treated with broad spectrum antibiotics tend to
9 have higher total IgE levels and are also more
10 susceptible to becoming allergic to foods. And
11 this can be prevented if you colonize the mice,
12 only during the neonatal period, with a mixture of
13 bacteria.

14 There's also been some interesting
15 studies suggesting that allergic infants may be
16 missing bacteria that protects them from the
17 development of food allergy. In this study by
18 Cathy Nagler's group at Northwestern, they took
19 stool specimens from either milk-allergic infants
20 or healthy infants, and they used that to colonize
21 germ-free mice. And they found that the infants
22 who received stool from the food allergic infants

1 also became allergic to milk and anaphylaxed,
2 while those that received stool from the healthy
3 infants were protected. They went on to show that
4 colonization of the germ-free mice with just a
5 single strain of bacteria was sufficient to confer
6 protection, which of course has very important
7 therapeutic implications.

8 Another important risk factor also seems
9 to be the timing of solid food introduction. I'm
10 sure most of you in this room are familiar with
11 the LEAP trial where four to eleven-month-old
12 infants at high risk for peanut allergy were
13 randomized to either early peanut introduction or
14 strict peanut avoidance. And as I'm sure you
15 know, the results are very striking. Those in the
16 consumption group had a much lower rate of peanut
17 allergy than those in the avoidance group, and
18 this protection was even seen in those infants who
19 were already sensitized to peanut when they
20 enrolled in the study. However, this protection
21 afforded by early introduction seems to be very
22 allergen specific. These infants were protected

1 against peanut allergy, but not tree nut or other
2 food allergies.

3 Overall, the evidence for early
4 introduction really seems to be strongest for
5 peanut and egg, although there may be different
6 windows of opportunity for other foods. For
7 example, there was recently a randomized
8 controlled trial that found that infants who
9 received cow's milk formula in the first one to
10 two months of life were less likely to have milk
11 allergy at age six months compared to infants who
12 strictly avoided milk during that early period.

13 And then finally, there's a growing body
14 of data that the skin may be an important route
15 for initial sensitization to food antigens. Under
16 normal circumstances, the skin forms this
17 protective barrier both to environmental insults
18 and allergens. However, in children who have
19 eczema or have variants in those genes that are
20 involved in the skin barrier function, such as
21 filaggrin, there is increased penetration of food
22 allergens as well as release of epithelial derived

1 alarmins that then skew the immune response
2 towards Th2.

3 Almost a decade ago now, Gideon Lack's
4 group showed that the probability of a child
5 developing peanut allergy was directly
6 proportional to the amount of peanut protein that
7 was present in their household dust and that
8 relationship was even stronger in those infants
9 who had eczema, especially severe eczema.

10 Our group had recently shown that
11 infants who were either sensitized or allergic to
12 peanut at one year of age, a greater percentage of
13 their peanut specific T cells expressed CLA, which
14 is a homing receptor that directs movement of the
15 T cells towards the skin compared to their
16 non-allergic controls. And these infants had a
17 corresponding reduction in the number of
18 peanut-specific T cells that expressed alpha
19 4/beta 7, which is a gut homing receptor. So,
20 these data also suggested that sensitized and
21 allergic infants first encounter peanut allergen
22 in the skin.

1 So, to summarize this first part of my
2 talk, I think there's very strong evidence that
3 genetics plays an important role in the
4 development of food allergy. But there's also
5 convincing data that several early life events,
6 including vitamin D deficiency, exposure to
7 antibiotics, and perhaps antacids, the age of
8 solid food introduction, and dysbiosis also plays
9 a very important role.

10 All right, for the second half of my
11 talk then, I want to discuss clinical endpoints
12 that can be used to assess the efficacy of
13 treatments for food allergy. And these fall into
14 three main categories, the amount of food the
15 patient tolerates post-treatment compared to
16 pre-treatment, safety outcomes, and then patient
17 and caregiver reported symptoms and quality of
18 life.

19 The vast majority of food allergy trials
20 to date have relied on the oral food challenge to
21 determine how much food a patient can consume
22 without having an allergic reaction after

1 treatment, and I think for good reason. The food
2 challenge is the most objective and quantitative
3 assessment we have to determine how much food a
4 patient can tolerate. However, what increase in
5 the amount of food tolerated actually constitutes
6 an effective treatment can be debated, but I think
7 this is a really important question to answer
8 because this will determine whether or not an
9 intervention is deemed to be effective.

10 Another important question is whether
11 the benefit is sustained once treatment is
12 discontinued. Desensitization refers to this
13 increase in the amount of food that a patient can
14 consume before they have an allergic reaction, but
15 it requires that they continuously are exposed to
16 the food.

17 Sustained unresponsiveness or remission
18 refers to a lack of clinical reactivity to the
19 food that persists even after they stop treatment.
20 But even here, some level of continued exposure
21 may be necessary, although the dose and the
22 frequency of that exposure is not well defined.

1 Although food challenges are the gold standard,
2 they certainly do have their limitations, as Alkis
3 alluded to earlier today. There is always a risk
4 the patient will have an allergic reaction, and in
5 some cases those can be severe. The procedure is
6 time consuming, both for families as well as
7 investigators. It requires highly trained
8 personnel and it's expensive to do.

9 There has been a tremendous amount of
10 heterogeneity across clinical trials in how food
11 challenges have been done. In the case of peanut
12 OIT, the cumulative dose of peanut challenged has
13 ranged anywhere from 1,000 to 10,000 milligrams of
14 peanut protein, and so passing a challenge in one
15 study can mean something very different than
16 passing a challenge in another study. There's
17 also variability in how much time is weighted
18 between doses, anywhere from 15 minutes to 2
19 hours, depending on the trial, and that can have
20 an impact on what eliciting dose is identified.

21 In some studies, investigators stop
22 challenges only when the patient has objective

1 symptoms of a reaction. But in other studies, the
2 challenges are said to have failed that the
3 patient has subjective symptoms in two organ
4 systems and even severe subjective symptoms in
5 just a single organ system. There also isn't any
6 consensus on when challenges should be performed
7 during the course of treatment. In the case of
8 OIT, most desensitization challenges are done
9 after several months on maintenance dosing, but
10 remission challenges have been done anywhere from
11 one week to 12 months off treatment. And as you
12 might expect, the longer patients are off
13 treatment, the more likely they are to regain the
14 reactivity.

15 Alkis alluded to this as well earlier
16 this morning, but there's also no consistent way
17 that food challenge outcomes are reported. Some
18 studies will report the eliciting dose, the
19 highest dose the patient received, that led to the
20 symptoms that stopped the challenge. Others will
21 report the highest dose that they tolerated, and
22 then other studies will report the cumulative dose

1 that they either tolerated or that led to a
2 reaction. All of these are absolutely valid
3 approaches, but the inconsistency across studies
4 has made it confusing to compare results across
5 the different trials.

6 We also don't know the relevance of how
7 much food a patient can tolerate during a food
8 challenge relates to their real life tolerance,
9 where food generally is not eaten in a graded
10 stepwise fashion. We also know that there are
11 other variables, such as exercise, viral
12 infections, even sleep deprivation that can affect
13 an individual's level or threshold of reactivity.
14 Food challenges also are not validated to predict
15 either the frequency or the severity of allergic
16 reactions in the real world, and this can be
17 something that's very challenging to study given
18 the relatively low frequency of accidental
19 exposures and reactions.

20 The second important clinical outcome,
21 then, is safety, and this can be assessed in a
22 number of different ways, including severe adverse

1 events, need to use epinephrine, anaphylactic
2 episodes, and non-anaphylactic symptoms. A recent
3 meta-analysis by Chu and colleagues, they looked
4 at 12 different randomized controlled trials for
5 peanut OIT and they found that compared to
6 individuals who were strictly avoiding peanut or
7 who received placebo, those in the active arm of
8 the trials were much more likely to pass an oral
9 food challenge to peanut, with a relative risk of
10 12. However, they were also more likely to
11 experience anaphylaxis, a greater frequency of
12 anaphylaxis, a greater need to use epinephrine,
13 and more serious adverse events and non-
14 anaphylactic reactions.

15 And so, I think in discussing or
16 considering any new treatment for food allergy,
17 patients are going to have to balance the risk and
18 the benefits in having those discussions with
19 families. I think it's important to understand
20 what they hope to achieve by undergoing the
21 treatment. In a recent survey by Dunlop and
22 colleagues, they asked 123 caregivers of children

1 who either were actively receiving immunotherapy
2 or had in the past, mostly for peanut and tree nut
3 allergy. And here 62 percent of the respondents
4 said their primary goal was to reduce the risk
5 that their child would have a severe life
6 threatening reaction; 11 percent wanted to avoid
7 the hassle of strictly avoiding foods; and, only 9
8 percent wanted to actually incorporate the food
9 into their diet.

10 But another study, another survey of
11 almost 370 caregivers of children with food
12 allergy found something very different. Here, the
13 vast majority of respondents said their goal was
14 really to be able to eat the food and incorporate
15 it into their diet, and this was especially the
16 case for children who were allergic to egg, milk,
17 wheat, and soy.

18 I think all of us can agree that any
19 treatment for food allergy needs to lead to
20 meaningful long-term improvements in patient
21 lives. But unfortunately, at this point we have
22 very little data on how our current treatments for

1 food allergy are doing in that regard. And that
2 meta- analysis by Chu I mentioned earlier, they
3 found no improvement in food allergy quality of
4 life with peanut OIT, but there was very little
5 data to evaluate. There's only been three
6 randomized placebo-controlled trials that have
7 compared post treatment food allergy quality of
8 life between subjects in the active and placebo
9 arms.

10 I think it's easy to imagine how a
11 treatment for food allergy would improve quality
12 of life, certainly by protecting against any life
13 threatening reactions, obviating the need to read
14 labels and strictly avoid the food, and then
15 certainly being able to incorporate the food into
16 the diet. But I think for some patients there's
17 some treatments that might actually reduce quality
18 of life, especially if it leads to a higher rate
19 of reactions. Although here the reactions may be
20 more predictable in some people that will lead to
21 less anxiety, but I think you also have to
22 consider the burden of the treatment as well.

1 In the case of OIT, many regimens
2 mandate that patients not exercise, shower, or
3 bathe within 3 hours of taking the dose. They're
4 asked not to take the dose right before bedtime.
5 It can involve frequent clinic visits, especially
6 during the buildup phase. They often need to take
7 the dose every day, which can be an issue if you
8 don't like the way it tastes. And I think we have
9 to assume for many patients, treatment will need
10 to be lifelong.

11 Part of the issue with discussing the
12 pros and cons of any new treatment for food
13 allergy is that heterogeneity across studies that
14 I alluded to earlier and is just creating
15 confusion for clinicians and patients on how to
16 really consider the results of the various trials.
17 To address this issue, there has been a major
18 effort to try and develop a core outcome set for
19 food allergy that will define specific domains and
20 outcomes within those domains that will be
21 measured in every future food allergy treatment
22 trial.

1 There are currently two of these
2 initiatives underway. One is being led by the
3 Core Outcome Measures for Food Allergy Consortium
4 and another by the European Academy of Allergy and
5 Clinical Immunology. And the goal of both these
6 efforts is trying to develop some international
7 consensus on core outcomes and the instruments
8 that will be used to measure those outcomes that
9 will be used in all future trials.

10 So, to summarize the second part of my
11 talk, the main clinical endpoints we have now to
12 determine the efficacy of treatments for food
13 allergy are really the amount of food tolerated,
14 safety, and then patient and caregiver quality of
15 life. The oral food challenge has been the main
16 tool we've used to measure food tolerance,
17 although it certainly has its limitations and
18 better biomarkers are needed. That significant
19 heterogeneity across study has made it very
20 challenging to compare outcomes across trials.
21 But we hope that issue will be alleviated with the
22 development of a core outcome set that ideally

1 will put more emphasis on patient reported
2 outcomes. Thank you.

3 DR. TOGIAS: Thank you, Pam. Our next
4 speaker is Dr. Elena Goleva, who's a professor in
5 the department of pediatrics at National Jewish
6 Health in Denver. She received her PhD from the
7 National University of Kyiv, Ukraine, and a
8 postdoc training with Donald Leung and National
9 Jewish Health. Currently, her research is
10 focusing on the epidermal development,
11 keratinocyte biology, skin barrier function, and
12 immune responses in atopic dermatitis and food
13 allergy. And Elena is going to talk to us about,
14 let's see what you're going to talk, the
15 relationship of atopic skin disease to food
16 allergy. Thank you.

17 DR. GOLEVA: Thank you. I would like to
18 thank the organizers for the opportunity to
19 present at this workshop. So, as you know, since
20 birth, our skin is subject to a number of
21 environmental exposures, and skin is creating a
22 barrier protecting us from variety of

1 interventions, although the underlying genetics
2 may also be contributing to the skin barrier
3 function.

4 So, recently, the dual allergen exposure
5 theory has been introduced, suggesting if initial
6 exposure to food allergen occurs through the skin,
7 then this may involve allergic sensitization.
8 However, if the exposure is occurring through the
9 gut, this creates a tolerance. So, there are a
10 number of pathways that are considered to be
11 involved in skin barrier dysfunction that lead to
12 eczema development and later to food allergy,
13 which starts with initial barrier insults through
14 scratching, microbe exposures, allergen,
15 underlying genetic abnormalities, stress and
16 pollution exposures, which release a number of
17 alarmins, TSLP, IL-33, IL-25, and these are
18 involved in regulating dendritic cell function and
19 initiation of type 2 allergic responses in the
20 skin.

21 So, in a recent study that we published
22 in Science Translational Medicine, we actually

1 have shown that patients with atopic dermatitis
2 with food allergy have the greatest skin barrier
3 dysfunction. So, looking at the transepidermal
4 water loss in the skin of these patients, we have
5 found that normal non-lesional skin of these
6 patients actually has a higher transepidermal
7 water loss as compared to patients with AD only or
8 healthy controls. And the greatest difference was
9 seen with tape stripping. So, if you perturb the
10 barrier and analyze the water loss as you sample
11 the skin, the total area under the curve for
12 patients with AGN food allergy was the greatest.

13 On the molecular side. When we looked
14 at the composition of the skin of these patients,
15 turns out the amount of EOS ceramides, those are
16 highly hydrophobic ceramides that are involved in
17 skin barrier and hydrophobicity was significantly
18 decreased in ADFA patients compared to AD and
19 healthy subjects.

20 On the other end, if you look at the
21 keratins as a representation of epidermal
22 development and differentiation in a normal

1 looking skin of ADFA patients, we've seen a
2 greater amount of keratin 5 and keratin 14, which
3 are usually expressed in the deeper layers of the
4 skin, suggesting that their skin has not been
5 fully differentiated. At the same time, we've
6 seen evidence for increased keratin 16 levels in
7 the skin of such subjects, suggesting that there's
8 some evidence of hyperproliferic response instead of
9 differentiation occurring in the skin of such
10 individuals.

11 I would like to point out, so, all these
12 patients in the study, they were allergic to
13 penis, and these patients had a history of
14 anaphylactic reactions. So, therefore, I would
15 like to propose that probably the changes in skin
16 barrier actually, and the changes in tool and
17 changes in skin barrier composition may actually
18 be as a predicting factor for patient either
19 passing or not passing oral food challenge, but
20 this remains to be seen.

21 So, our group has introduced minimally
22 invasive skin sampling using a tape strip

1 analysis. So, what is happening? We are using
2 these discs, which have adhesives. They apply to
3 the skin, and then we apply up to 20 discs to the
4 same area, and these discs are stored and could be
5 preserved at -80 for prolonged time prior to
6 analysis. In a number of publications, we have
7 shown that these skin tapes could be used for a
8 variety of applications for RNA seq analysis,
9 lipidomic analysis, proteomic cytokine and
10 metabolic analysis.

11 So, I would like you to introduce to our
12 work that we had done in the birth cohort study,
13 trying to understand how is skin barrier involved
14 in regulation or predictability of a future
15 allergic response. So, this is a cohort of
16 patients that we have enrolled together with our
17 collaborators in Seoul, South Korea. So,
18 altogether, there were over 100 participants in
19 this study, and these patients were monitored for
20 24 months since birth. And at 2, 6, 12, and 24
21 months, the samples were collected from these
22 patients.

1 At the end of the study, by 24 months,
2 we determined that there were 28 patients with
3 atopic dermatitis. Nine infants develop eczema
4 with food allergy, and nine patients had food
5 allergy only. So, first, we were interested to
6 see whether we were able to predict future eczema
7 development in this cohort. So, what we have
8 done, we took the tape strips from these patients
9 at two months of age and characterized the
10 cytokine profile in these samples. So, what we
11 determined that there was already an increase in
12 TSLP in the skin tape strip samples of kids that
13 developed eczema in the future, at least at 6
14 months or up to 12 months of age. Also, we've
15 seen an evidence for increased levels of IL-13 in
16 that group.

17 Profiling the lipid profile in the skin,
18 we have determined that in these patients that are
19 destined to develop eczema in the future, we
20 already see changes in the EOS ceramides that are
21 cross linked to cornified envelopes, so called
22 protein bound ceramides. So, EOS ceramides are

1 linked to proteins, and this creates a hydrophobic
2 barrier in the skin. So, as you can see, EOS
3 ceramides or protein-bound ceramides were already
4 significantly reduced in skin of kids at two
5 months of age prior to development of eczema,
6 suggesting there were already some molecular
7 processing occurring in the skin that were
8 compromising their skin barrier function.

9 So, these two lipxygenases, ALOXE3 and
10 ALOX12B, are involved in a modification of EOS
11 ceramides prior to their cross linking with
12 cornified envelope proteins. So, what we found
13 that these two lipxygenases are actually under
14 TSLP regulation. And using keratinocyte cultures
15 which were exposed to TSLP, we've shown that both
16 of these lipxygenases can be inhibited by TSLP.
17 Therefore, we suggest that the type 2 inflammatory
18 response that is already establishing in the skin
19 of these infants in two months may be involved in
20 the regulation of protein-bound ceramide
21 formation.

22 So, then, using the multivariable

1 logistic regression analysis, we were trying to
2 estimate the risks of a future eczema development.
3 So, individually, just looking at TSLP alone or
4 the family history of atopy, the odds ratio of
5 future eczema development were at least twofold or
6 sixfold. However, if we are now combining this
7 together with few lipid markers, you see that the
8 odds ratio is starting to increase.

9 So, here, if we're using TSLP and a
10 protein balanced ceramides, the odds ratio of
11 future eczema prediction is now up to thirtyfold.
12 And the highest combination which was a family
13 history IL-13 and a protein-bound EOS ceramide
14 plus a sphingomyelin gave us an odds ratio of 54
15 of future eczema prediction.

16 We also noticed that in this cohort
17 there were a number of children that developed
18 food allergy in the future. Most of these
19 children, they had food allergy to egg. One of
20 the patients was peanut allergic. We also were
21 interested to see whether any predictors of future
22 food allergy development at two months of age.

1 So, what we found was there were these unique
2 ceramides with monounsaturated fatty acids, 24:1
3 and 26:1, which were uniquely increased in the
4 skin of the future food allergy kids. And we
5 think these ceramides may also be involved in the
6 regulation of the skin barrier. And this stems
7 from a prior work with artificial lipid membranes
8 where researchers were mixing ceramides with
9 monounsaturated fatty acids or non-unsaturated
10 fatty acids. And when they found that when the
11 membranes are enriched in such monounsaturated
12 ceramides, then the water flux through such
13 membranes is increasing suggesting that
14 mono-unsaturation of fatty acids and ceramides is
15 involved in water regulations with the barrier.
16 Therefore, we also suggest that likely the
17 increased presence of such ceramides in the skin
18 or future food allergy kids may indicate also some
19 barrier deficiency early on in life in such
20 individuals.

21 On a cytokine perspective, looking at
22 the panel of cytokines in a skin tape samples,

1 what we found here that uniquely IL-33 was
2 increased in all of the kids that developed food
3 allergy in the future. And again, using a
4 combination of these markers. Individually, they
5 all had some predictability for future food
6 allergy development. However, the greatest effect
7 was achieved if we combined IL-33 and 24:1 and a
8 ceramide with the odds ratio of future food
9 allergy prediction of 100 fold. So, this data
10 will be actually presented at the AI meeting this
11 week.

12 Using animal model studies, it has been
13 shown that both TSLP and IL-33 have unique role in
14 a future eczema or food allergy development
15 through the epithelial perturbation, these
16 alarmins are released. However, and one of the
17 recent studies by Dr. Jaha's group have shown that
18 if you perturb the skin barrier, you can see
19 elevation of TSLP in IL-33 at the skin site. But
20 when you look at the plasma, actually you only see
21 IL-33 increase in circulation but you do not see
22 TSLP release. But if such animals then are

1 challenged with ovalbumin, it turns out that this
2 mechanical skin injury promotes food allergy
3 anaphylactic reaction due to IL-33 release from
4 the skin, which then promotes intestinal mast cell
5 expansion.

6 So, in conclusion, I hope I've provided
7 you some evidence that epicutaneous sensitization
8 may contribute to food allergy development and our
9 birth cohort studies support this theory because
10 there are unique changes that we are observing in
11 the epidermis and epidermal barrier composition
12 that occur in infants at two months prior to
13 development of AD or food allergy. So, we
14 observing an increase in TSLP which is also found
15 in patients with eczema and the increase in TSLP
16 is also found in the future AD infants. On the
17 other hand, we see an increase in IL-33 in the
18 skin of future food allergic individuals.

19 So, therefore we propose that there's a
20 unique role for TSLP and IL-33 in future AD and FA
21 development. And animal model studies also
22 support some of this notion.

1 With that, I'd like to thank our funding
2 agency, Atopic Dermatitis Research Network and
3 also Sunbeam ABC. And also, I would like to thank
4 the lab and number of collaborators and Dr. Ahn
5 and Dr. Kim, our collaborators at Samsung Medical
6 Center that enrolled this birth cohort which we're
7 now investigating. Thank you.

8 DR. TOGIAS: Thank you, Elena. Our next
9 speaker is going to be Alexandra Santos, who is
10 Professor of Pediatric Allergy at King's College
11 London and Attending Physician Pediatric Allergy
12 at the Evelina London Children's Hospital,
13 qualified in Medicine from the University of
14 Coimbra and specialized in allergy and clinical
15 immunology and completed her PhD at King's
16 College. And Alexandra is going to talk to us
17 about basophil activation tests.

18 DR. SANTOS: Thank you very much, Alkis.
19 I'd like to thank Dr. Rabin and all the organizers
20 for the great opportunity to be here and actively
21 participate in this workshop. It's really a great
22 pleasure to talk about basophil activation test

1 and whether it's ready for prime time.

2 So, these are my disclosures and this is
3 the outline of my talk. So, I will take you
4 through the rationale for using the basophil
5 activation test as a biomarker for food allergy.
6 Then, which type of biomarkers I think the
7 basophil activation test constitutes in the
8 context of food allergy, and also some validation,
9 technical and clinical validation that we and
10 others have done and that support the use of this
11 test more widely.

12 So, the rationale to use the basophil
13 activation test as a biomarker for food allergy is
14 that basophils, together with mast cells, are
15 defector cells of acute allergic reactions. So,
16 as I'm sure you're all very familiar, in an
17 allergen specific immune response, there's a Th2
18 biased response to the allergen. B cells are
19 commits switch on to IgE production, commit to
20 producing IgE, and differentiating the plasma
21 cells that produce IgE. And this IgE is bound to
22 high affinity receptors on the surface of mast

1 cells and basophils. And this is sensitization.

2 But then in allergic individuals who
3 also have IgE, when they are next exposed to the
4 allergen, then the allergen is able to cross link
5 two or more IgE molecules on the surface that are
6 receptor bound on the surface of the mast cells
7 and basophils. And then this triggers cell
8 activation and the granulation with the release of
9 vasoactive mediators that are responsible for the
10 allergic symptoms. So, the basophils are central
11 cells to acute allergic reactions to foods.

12 Now, the basophil activation test is a
13 flow cytometry based assay. So, we use whole
14 blood in an anticoagulant that needs to be done
15 within 24 hours of blood collection. Then a small
16 volume of blood is aliquoted to different tubes
17 that are then stimulated with different
18 concentrations of the allergen, buffer alone as a
19 negative control, or anti IgE as an IgE mediated
20 positive control, and FMLP or another non-IgE
21 mediated stimulant that is able to activate
22 basophils like FMLP as a non-IgE mediated positive

1 control. And then we add antibodies sustained for
2 the basophil population. And then within this
3 basophil population, we looked at activation
4 markers on the surface of basophils, and CD63 is
5 one of them, and CD203c is another activation
6 marker that is used.

7 And so, the typical result for the
8 basophil activation test in an allergic patient is
9 this bell shaped dose response curve, where with
10 increasing concentrations of the allergen, there
11 is an increase in the expression of the activation
12 markers up to a plateau. And then we often refer
13 to basophil reactivity as the proportion of
14 basophils that are activated at a given
15 concentration. And the sort of inflection point
16 of this dose response curve is the maximal
17 reactivity. And then we refer to as basophil
18 sensitivity the amount of allergen or the
19 concentration of allergen that is needed to induce
20 basophil activation. And EC50 would be the
21 concentration of allergen that's needed to induce
22 half maximal reactivity of the basophils. And so,

1 these are different ways to report the outcomes of
2 the test.

3 So, the beauty of the basophil
4 activation test is that it is a functional assay
5 that measures the combined effect of different
6 characteristics of IgE. So, it not only detects
7 the presence of IgE, but also whether this IgE is
8 able to convey the activation signal onto the
9 basophils. And I keep citing this work from quite
10 a few years ago now by Kristas and Netal

11 (phonetic). And it's with
12 house-dust mites. So, not really
13 food allergy, but I think it's a
14 very elegant work where they
15 sensitized human basophils with
16 monoclonal antibodies towards their
17 P2
18 (phonetic), and then they sensitize
19 these basophils with a known
20 repertoire of monoclonal
21 antibodies, and they very elegantly
22 show that, and I'm just giving two

1 examples here.

2 So, for specific activity, which is the
3 proportion of IgE, that's allergen specific in
4 relation to total IgE, and the affinity of IgE for
5 allergens. So, they showed that inducing
6 variation of these functional characteristics of
7 IgE would reflect on a different level of basophil
8 activation. And so specifically for specific
9 activity, which is the top graph, they show that
10 the more allergen specific IgE, you add the same
11 amount of IgE. So, just the proportion of IgE
12 that's allergen specific, the greater the
13 proportion of basophils that become activated.
14 So, essentially it changes basophil reactivity.

15 Whereas if you synthesize the basophils
16 with antibodies that have higher affinity for the
17 allergen, this doesn't significantly change
18 basophil reactivity. So, in terms of the
19 proportion of basophils that become activated, but
20 as you have antibodies of higher affinity, you're
21 able to induce basophils with lower amounts of
22 allergen. And so, this reflects more changes in

1 basophil sensitivity.

2 So, we have done some studies in the lab
3 using plasma from patients. So, not monoclonal
4 antibodies. We are not so sophisticated, but we
5 were looking at just plasma from patients that
6 were assessed for possible peanut allergy. So, in
7 red, you see allergic patients, in blue, patients
8 that had IgE but were tolerant. And we measured
9 the levels of specific IgE to peanut, which is
10 what you see in the upper left graph labeled with
11 specificity. Then we calculated the amount of IgE
12 that's allergen specific, that specific activity
13 as a proportion of total IgE. We measured
14 diversity as the number of allergens within
15 peanuts that IgE recognized, and then avidity as
16 the strength of which the collective of IgE binds
17 to the peanut extract.

18 And as you can see from the graphs, all
19 of these variables, particularly specificity,
20 specific activity and diversity, were directly
21 correlated with basophil and mast cell activation.
22 And so, we then put this in diagnostic models.

1 So, combining these functional characteristics of
2 IgE. So, what you can see in the graph is the
3 relative importance of the various functional
4 characteristics of IgE to induce basophil and mast
5 cell activation. So, diversity and specific
6 activity were the most important. Titus, which is
7 what we currently used in clinic, was actually the
8 least important.

9 And then here you can see in the table
10 the diagnostic performance of these models,
11 considering three or four functional
12 characteristics, and then the basophil activation
13 test and the mast cell activation test. So, you
14 can see that the basophil activation test
15 performed best, but also using these functional
16 characteristics performed better than just
17 measuring the levels of IgE to peanut. So, which
18 type of biomarkers can the basophil activation
19 test constitute in the context of food allergy?
20 So, I think it can be a diagnostic biomarker, a
21 prognostic biomarker, a response biomarker and a
22 predictive biomarker. And I'll show you some

1 evidence of why that is.

2 So, in terms of using the basophil
3 activation test as a diagnostic biomarker, so we
4 have been conducting studies funded by the Medical
5 Research Council in the U.K., where we invite
6 children that need a challenge for clinical
7 reasons, and then we do double-blind,
8 placebo-controlled food challenges in all
9 children. So, these were studies designed
10 according to the starred guidelines. So, we do
11 double-blind, placebo-controlled food challenges
12 in all children. And then on the day of the
13 challenge, we do skin prick testing and we collect
14 blood samples for igg testing and for the basophil
15 activation test.

16 So, this is an example of basophil
17 activation test, the egg, for example. So, you
18 can see how we identify basophil. So, in the
19 first row of flow plots, you can see we gate on
20 the lymphocyte monocyte population, then site
21 scatter low CD203c positive, and then CD1 to 3
22 positive, HLA-DR negative, and that's our basophil

1 population. Then we gate the negative control,
2 and then we measure whatever is above that with
3 the increasing concentrations of allergen or
4 positive controls. So, we have completed the
5 study for peanuts; we have completed the study for
6 egg; and we are close to completing the study for
7 cow's milk, sesame, and cashew nuts. And the
8 reason for this is that, as you know, the allergy
9 tests are allergen specific, so we have to really
10 to validate them for each individual food allergy.

11 So, for the basophil activation test to
12 peanut, we have previously shown that this
13 distinguishes quite well between allergic patients
14 there in red and patients that have IgE to peanut
15 but are tolerant in blue. In our initial
16 discovery cohort, the basophil activation test to
17 peanut had both high sensitivity and high
18 specificity. We then validated this in an
19 independent population and applied this cutoff
20 that we had previously identified as the optimal
21 cutoff, and that was for the 100 nanogram per
22 milligram concentration, or the average between 10

1 and 100, which performed exactly the same.

2 And this had a lower sensitivity at 83
3 percent, but a high, very high specificity, so it
4 was 100 percent. In this validation cohort, we
5 then had the opportunity to test with exactly the
6 same method for the basophil activation test to
7 peanut, the children that were coming to the end
8 of the LEAP study, and then one year later at the
9 end of LEAP-On study, and also the peanut allergy
10 and sensitization study.

11 So, on the day that they came for their
12 peanut allergy assessment, which included food
13 challenges, in the vast majority of cases, we did
14 the basophil activation test. And so, applying
15 the cutoff that we had previously identified to
16 this very large population of very well
17 characterized children from the LEAP and
18 associated studies, again, the sensitivity was
19 lower but the specificity was 99 percent. So,
20 confirming that the basophil activation test is
21 very useful to confirm the presence of peanut
22 allergy if the test is positive. And the ROC

1 curves in the middle show the relative performance
2 of the basophil activation test in relation to the
3 other tests done in parallel in the initial
4 discovery cohort.

5 So, more recently, we concluded the
6 study for egg allergy where we included 150
7 children aged 6 months to 15 years that needed a
8 challenge to egg and 40 percent of those children.
9 So, 60 out of the 150 reacted and the others did
10 not. We had a small proportion of indeterminate
11 challenges. As you can see from the graph in the
12 middle, there was a very good discrimination
13 between the results of the basophil activation
14 test in the allergic children compared to the
15 children that were sensitized but tolerant. The
16 sensitivity of the basophil activation test the
17 egg was 78 percent and the specificity was 77
18 percent. And on the right-hand side you can see
19 the ROC curves compared to the other tests that
20 were done in parallel.

21 Now, recently, to inform the new EAACI
22 clinical guidelines for the diagnosis of IgE

1 mediated food allergy, we have conducted
2 comprehensive systematic review of the literature
3 and meta-analysis of the accuracy of any tests to
4 diagnose any food allergies, so long as the
5 studies included at least a proportion of patients
6 that underwent challenges. We included 149
7 studies overall and this corresponded to over
8 24,000 subjects.

9 In terms of the basophil activation test
10 studies, we included 27 studies and we were able
11 to do meta-analysis for the basophil activation
12 test to peanut and the basophil activation test to
13 sesame because for the other foods we didn't have
14 enough number of studies. These figures on the
15 left-hand side show the risk of bias assessment
16 for the studies included in the meta-analysis,
17 where green means low risk of bias and red high
18 risk of bias. And you can also see the diagnostic
19 performance of the tests as a result of the
20 meta-analysis. So, with the basophil activation
21 test to peanut having about 91 percent sensitivity
22 and about 80 percent specificity, and the basophil

1 activation test to sesame having 89 percent
2 sensitivity and almost 93 percent specificity,
3 what you can see on the right-hand side is how the
4 basophil activation test performed compared to the
5 other tests in the same studies in the same
6 meta-analysis. So, you can see that for peanut,
7 the basophil activation test and specific IgE to
8 Rh2 (phonetic) using the ImmunoCAP single plex
9 were the best tests. And so for the sesame seed
10 allergy, the basophil activation test was the best
11 test followed by Ses I 1 specific IgE.

12 We have now completed the guidelines
13 that have recently been published and the basophil
14 activation test was included as a recommended test
15 to support the diagnosis of IgE mediated food
16 allergy with high certainty of evidence. It was a
17 conditional recommendation, mainly for the fact
18 that it's not a test that's widely available to
19 clinicians. And in the diagnostic algorithm, so,
20 in the diagnostic pathway, the basophil activation
21 test figures as a sort of subsequent step in the
22 diagnostic assessment.

1 So, after patients are submitted to skin
2 pre-test, specific IgE and then specific IgE to
3 individual components for the food that this is
4 informative, and then the basal activation test
5 can be done, particularly for peanut and sesame,
6 which is where he had the strongest evidence. And
7 then oral food challenges only if needed to
8 clarify the allergic status.

9 So, now some data on the technical
10 validation of the basophil activation test. So,
11 this is a study that we did at King's College
12 London. So, where we assessed the intra assays
13 coefficient of variation, which is what you can
14 see in the left-hand side graph, which was less
15 than 5 percent in experienced hands. We included
16 102 children that were being assessed for possible
17 peanut allergy in this study, and 72 of these were
18 allergic and 30 were sensitized.

19 We tested the children using two
20 different methods for the basophil activation
21 test, and this is the correlation plot for these
22 two methods. So, you can see that there was a

1 strong direct correlation between the two methods
2 for the basophil activation test, but the results
3 were not exactly the same. We had our in house
4 method and then an external method, and this
5 external method had about 4 patients out of 32
6 that were challenged. So, selecting only the
7 patients that were challenged, there were four
8 that were misdiagnosed compared to the outcomes of
9 challenges.

10 We also did the same patients, and all
11 these patients we tested in two labs on the same
12 day. So, in our research lab at King's College
13 London, and then in a diagnostic lab. And this is
14 how the result looks like for 100 nanograms per
15 milligram of peanut extract. So, very strong
16 correlation between the two results, which was
17 much better than we expected with a very low
18 variation. So, this was a very nice proof of
19 concept that if the methods are very carefully
20 standardized and performed in experienced hands,
21 then they can be very reliable and reproducible.

22 Now, the basophil activation test as a

1 prognostic biomarker. So, there is evidence from
2 studies that the basophil activation test can
3 provide some information about patients that at
4 higher risk of having severe reactions and also of
5 reacting to lower amounts of the allergen. I'm
6 giving you, here, the example of severity for time
7 constraints. So, we and others have shown that
8 the greater the proportion of activated basophils,
9 the higher the risk that patients will experience
10 an allergic reaction during challenges. So, this
11 on the far left, it's the graph of our initial
12 study. So, where we looked only at patients that
13 had a positive challenge, so they had challenge
14 proven food allergy, and then within those we
15 looked at whether they developed a severe reaction
16 or a non-severe reaction. And the basophil
17 activation test discriminated well between the two
18 groups.

19 In the middle graph, it's looking at the
20 severity of allergic reactions in participants in
21 the LEAP and associated studies. And so here we
22 went a bit further. So, determining cutoffs for

1 the basophil activation test to identify the
2 patients that have severe reactions, which are the
3 ones that you can see in the middle graph as
4 having red dots. So, these are the patients that
5 had severe reactions on the challenges. And so,
6 the cutoff for the basophil activation test had
7 100 percent sensitivity and 97 percent specificity
8 to identify the patients that had severe reactions
9 during the challenges.

10 And then on the far right is a figure
11 from a study by Sharon Chinthrajah and colleagues
12 looking at peanut allergy confirmed by challenge
13 and looking at a variety of different parameters,
14 clinical and immunological, to predict severity of
15 allergic reactions during peanut challenges. And
16 the basophil activation test and two asthma
17 biomarkers were the best predictors of severity
18 and severe outcomes.

19 We have also done -- apologies, this was
20 meant to be animated, but we have just finished
21 the X study and we did similar analysis looking at
22 severity of allergic reactions. So, the tables

1 that you cannot read are just a list of parameters
2 that we looked at in terms of how different they
3 are in severe reactors versus non severe reactors.
4 And these are double-blind placebo-controlled food
5 challenges to egg. And there was no statistical
6 significant difference in this long list of
7 parameters except for specific IgE 12 ovomucoid
8 and the basophil activation test to egg at a
9 variety of concentrations.

10 What you can see in the left-hand side
11 is a representation of the result of the basophil
12 activation test to egg in severe reactors versus
13 non severe reactors. And then in the middle the
14 ROC curves for the basophil activation test in red
15 and the specific IgE 12 ovomucoid in green. And
16 then on the right-hand side, the sensitivity and
17 specificity of the identified cutoffs for the
18 basophil activation test to predict severe
19 reactions to egg during challenges, which was 76
20 percent sensitivity and 78 percent specificity.
21 Now, the basophil activation test as a predictive
22 biomarker. So, I give the example here of two

1 peanut oral immunotherapy studies that have shown
2 that the basophil activation test can identify as
3 early as three months into treatment the patients
4 that are going to have sustained and
5 responsiveness versus the patients that are going
6 to have transient desensitization. So, I'd like
7 to highlight here the study by Saritha Patil and
8 colleagues where the basophil activation test to
9 Rh2 as early as three months enabled to
10 distinguish these two different pathways.

11 So, with patients that had sustained
12 unresponsiveness having a decreased basophil
13 activation to Rh2 that was sustained over the
14 course of treatment and after treatment, and then
15 with patients that had transient desensitization,
16 there was a slight reduction in basophil
17 activation, but this quickly bounced back to
18 levels similar to pretreatment levels. And then
19 this randomized controlled trial of peanut oral
20 immunotherapy had a similar finding.

21 Now there are a variety of studies in
22 the literature documenting the basophil activation

1 test as a response biomarker. So, I'm giving here
2 some examples of studies looking at allergen
3 specific immunotherapy in different modalities.
4 So, oral immunotherapy, sublingual immunotherapy,
5 and epicutaneous immunotherapy to do two different
6 allergens. So, peanut and egg. And just taken
7 together, what the studies can show is that there
8 is a decrease in basophil activation to the
9 allergen compared to placebo. And this can be
10 quite early, during -- quite soon after the start
11 of treatment, as early as 12 weeks, for example in
12 the peanut epicutaneous study. And this is not
13 seen in placebo treated individuals or in the egg
14 OIT study that I bring here, which compared to
15 patients undergoing a baked egg diet.

16 So, now the question is whether the
17 basophil activation test can be used as a
18 surrogate endpoint. So, we've heard a lot about
19 this today and I think I have provided some
20 evidence that there is a clear mechanistic
21 rationale to use the basophil activation test as a
22 possible surrogate endpoint, that if used in a

1 standardized way and carefully inexperienced hand,
2 it can be a reliable measure. There is evidence
3 from randomized controlled trials that the
4 basophil activation test mirrors the clinical
5 outcome. There's data from observational studies
6 defining very precise cutoffs. And so, I see the
7 basophil activation test as a potential surrogate
8 endpoint both for clinical practice and for
9 clinical trials.

10 We've heard about the advantages of
11 doing this in food allergy, which would be to
12 reduce double-blind placebo- controlled food
13 challenges, have easier assessment of patients,
14 have less invasive, less risky procedures. So,
15 this would facilitate the feasibility of clinical
16 trials and would also encourage patients to
17 participate in clinical trials.

18 Now, of course this would be the
19 benefits. Of course there are risks, and I think
20 we can mitigate those risks. For example, for the
21 basophil activation test, there's about 10 percent
22 of subjects that have non responder basophils.

1 So, for those individuals, we could have an
2 alternative, which could be a mast cell activation
3 test, or could be IgE measurements or a
4 combination.

5 And also, if we did do a study where the
6 basophil activation test was used as a surrogate
7 endpoint, I think this could be complemented with
8 direct evidence from clinical benefit, and this
9 could be an additional trial looking at oral food
10 challenge outcome or looking at real life benefit
11 in terms of the ability of patients to introduce
12 the food, the reduction in allergic reactions or
13 severity of allergic reactions in the community.

14 And with this, I would like to conclude
15 with my take-home messages. So, the basophil
16 activation test is a functional assay that
17 includes all elements of acute allergic reactions,
18 as much as we can do in a test tube, and reflects
19 well the clinical phenotype of patients. I think
20 there's clear evidence associating the basophil
21 activation test with the outcome of oral food
22 challenges and whether the patients are allergic

1 or tolerant, severity of allergic reactions during
2 challenges, clinical response to immunomodulatory
3 treatments, and prediction of response to
4 treatment, whether this is going to be favorable
5 or not. And for this reason, I think the basophil
6 activation test can be used as a diagnostic
7 biomarker, as a prognostic biomarker, as a
8 response biomarker, and as a predictive biomarker.

9 And lastly, the basic activation test
10 has been recommended as a test to support the
11 diagnosis of IgE mediated food allergy in the new
12 EAACI clinical guidelines. And I think it can be
13 a validated or at least a reasonably likely
14 surrogate endpoint for food allergy.

15 And I would like to thank all my lab and
16 about two study team, all my colleagues and
17 collaborators and my funders, particularly the
18 Medical Research Council in the U.K. And Immune
19 Tolerance Network and NIH in the U.S.

20 And thank you for listening.

21 DR. TOGIAS: Thank you, Alexandra.

22 Thank you very much. Our next speaker is Dr. Hugh

1 Sampson, who's Kurt Hirschhorn Professor of
2 Pediatrics at the Icahn School of Medicine in New
3 York, and has over 40 years' experience in
4 translational research focusing on food allergy
5 and basic immunologic mechanisms. Need to say
6 he's a past-president of the AAAAI, and most
7 importantly, he was elected at the National
8 Academy of Medicine in 2003. Hugh.

9 DR. SAMPSON: Thank you, Alkis and like
10 to thank the organizers for inviting me to this
11 meeting. So, I'm going to be speaking about
12 epitope specific antibodies as possible
13 diagnostic, prognostic, and predictive biomarkers.
14 To start, I do want to give my disclosures to let
15 you know that Mount Sinai has licensed the IP for
16 commercial development of this speed based epitope
17 assay that I'll describe to you to allergenics.
18 And I do sit as an uncompensated member on their
19 board.

20 So, the objectives of my talk in the
21 next 20 minutes is to describe the rationale and
22 technology for mapping allergenic epitopes,

1 discuss how epitope specific IgE may be used as a
2 diagnostic biomarker, and then discuss some
3 evidence on how epitope specific IgE profiling may
4 be used as a prognostic and predictive biomarker.

5 So, just to give you a little history on
6 this, this all started over 25 years ago when we
7 asked the pretty naive question about whether or
8 not epitope specific IgE binding to various food
9 allergens could account for the differences we see
10 in allergenic reactivity. And at that time there
11 were a fair number of the allergenic proteins that
12 had been well characterized. We knew the amino
13 acid sequence, there was some information on
14 confirmation, but basically we know that IgE or
15 any antibody can bind to either conformational or
16 linear epitopes. Now, when we do these assays, at
17 that time, the technology was this spots membrane,
18 and basically we are able to generate 10- to
19 15-mer amino acid peptides. And what we would do
20 is basically take the sequence of the particular
21 protein, we'd generate a series of overlapping
22 amino acid base peptides so that we could identify

1 where specifically these antibodies bound to the
2 linear portion of the various proteins.

3 And with that, we started off with
4 ovomucoid and using patient plasma serum. So,
5 this is serum from patients who had undergone oral
6 food challenges to egg. We were able to identify
7 five locations, or epitope regions on the
8 ovomucoid. We then started looking at individual
9 patients, and when we did that, we found that only
10 about 50 percent of them actually bound any of
11 these linear epitopes. So, we tried to figure out
12 what was going on, and we basically took these
13 proteins and we ran them on native gels. And one
14 set was just the native protein, one we reduced
15 and alkylated. So, you've linearized the protein,
16 so you've lost the conformational epitope. And
17 then we also looked at deglycosylation.

18 And what we saw was that the children
19 who had the persistent allergy, those that did not
20 outgrow their egg allergy were the ones that were
21 binding to the linear epitopes, whereas the
22 children that had transient or would outgrow their

1 egg allergy, which is about 80 percent of
2 children, did not bind these linear epitopes. So,
3 this got us into the concept of linear and
4 conformational epitopes, but led to the hypothesis
5 that the induction of IgE to these various linear
6 epitopes, which would largely not be unaffected by
7 either processing or digestion, were responsible
8 for the long lasting persistent allergy.

9 So, then Wayne Shreffler came into the
10 lab, and Wayne was interested in peanut, and
11 peanut had a whole larger number of potential
12 epitopes. And he developed this epoxy glass slide
13 assay where we were able to analyze 210
14 overlapping peptides at the same time. And we
15 generated this profile of epitopes, or potential
16 binding to peptides, for Ara h 1, 2, and 3.

17 We then ran into the problem of trying
18 to get consistent epoxy glass slides. So, we had
19 a lot of problems with getting different, lots of
20 slides that would bind these peptides in an
21 equivalent manner. So, then moved on to the
22 Luminex system, where we then started conjugating

1 the various Luminex beads with the various
2 peptides. And here we took 64 peptides, which
3 seemed to be the most informative from the work
4 that Wayne had done, and put this into this assay
5 system, this Luminex assay system, where we could
6 then get mean fluorescent outputs, intensity
7 outputs, on each of these separate peptides with a
8 very high throughput system.

9 And then shown down here is basically
10 looking at the kind of map you might get from a
11 whole group of patients. But basically, this
12 fluorescent intensity reflected IgE levels to each
13 of these different peptides. The other advantage
14 of the Luminex system when we compare it to the
15 microarray is that we are able to use much smaller
16 amounts of serum or plasma, that its high
17 throughput can be done in much less time than we
18 could do with the slide method. And then also the
19 variation in reactivity to the various peptides
20 done on different days, different amounts, was
21 much tighter using the Luminex bead system.

22 And then this is just giving you

1 basically a heat map readout of a number of
2 patients that had been analyzed for binding. And
3 what you see along the y-axis is, or the
4 horizontal that goes across the y-axis there is
5 the individual patients, and each column
6 represents a different peptide. And you can see
7 that there are major differences in the different
8 patients. And with that, you can basically sort
9 individuals out into those who are, in this case,
10 we're calling them allergic, but these are the
11 reactors from the nonreactors.

12 So, then we wanted to look at whether or
13 not this assay, where we're looking specifically
14 at different epitope binding, could be more
15 accurate in the diagnostic arena than what we have
16 currently. So, we were able to get 133 subjects
17 from the LEAP trial, and these were individuals
18 that were in the avoider group. And then analyzed
19 them for epitope binding. And basically, what we
20 were able to find after going through various
21 machine-learning algorithms were two epitopes that
22 seemed to be most specific in the diagnosis of

1 peanut allergy, as shown by oral food challenge.

2 So, we took this algorithm and then we
3 applied it to two other study cohorts, the CoFAR2
4 cohort that we had. So, this was 82 patients
5 under the age of or at about five years of age,
6 and then 84 patients who were in the Poise trial
7 at Stanford, looking at peanut oral immunotherapy
8 and taking baseline samples. And then this slide
9 just shows you the different sensitivity
10 specificity of all the different methods of
11 looking at peanut allergy. And the ones, I think
12 that are most important to us as clinicians is the
13 accuracy of diagnosis. And what you can see are
14 the accuracy of diagnosis for skin test, for
15 specific IgE to peanut and the various components.

16 Looking then, though, at the use of
17 these two specific peptides, you see that the
18 accuracy rate is significantly better than what we
19 see with the standard methods in use. And then if
20 we want to combine all three together, we can
21 actually get a little bit better accuracy. And
22 so, looking at this and comparing the different

1 groups, we see that the concordance with the oral
2 food challenge was about 93 percent using this
3 bead-based epitope assay, compared to prediction
4 with the prick skin test, which was in about 84
5 percent, and then ImmunoCAP IgE and Ara h 2 were
6 significantly lower. So, overall, this assay did
7 seem to have best concordance with the outcome of
8 oral food challenge in this group.

9 The next thing then was to look and see
10 was it possible to use this profiling to get a
11 better idea of how much peanut individuals would
12 be able to tolerate before developing a reaction.
13 And there was evidence, again, from some work that
14 Wayne had done looking with the microarray system,
15 that the more diverse epitope binding you had, the
16 more likely you were to have a reaction or a
17 different reaction rate.

18 So, we basically were able to take
19 samples from two studies for the discovery cohort,
20 the BOPI trial from London and then the OPIA trial
21 from Australia, and use those to develop the
22 algorithm based on the different challenge levels.

1 And you see the different amounts of protein that
2 these individuals ingested, which would then give
3 us a broad range of different levels of
4 reactivity. And then we were able to use three
5 other trials, Cafeteria trial, CoFAR6, and POPEETS
6 trial, along with some samples from the first two,
7 to validate this system.

8 So, looking at this, this is now just a
9 heat map representation of what IgE looks like.
10 The red is the higher levels of mean fluorescent
11 intensity, the blue are the lower. And what we
12 can see is that there is a nice inverse
13 correlation between the cumulative tolerated dose
14 and the diversity of IgE binding to these various
15 epitopes. But the question was, and again, using
16 machine learning, whether we could cut that down
17 so you can use this in a more effective way. And
18 we found that in this case, there were two
19 peptides that did seem to be most representative,
20 and these were one from Ara h 2 and one from Ara h
21 3.

22 In looking at the predictive models,

1 there was a strong suggestion that we would, in
2 fact, be able to get some idea putting people into
3 three different buckets, low, moderate, and high
4 tolerance to the peanut protein. And from this,
5 we have this result where we were able to put
6 people into these different areas, either low,
7 moderate, or high threshold levels. And when we
8 run these algorithms, then what we can see is, for
9 example, if you happen to be in the low threshold
10 group, you have about a 50 percent chance of
11 tolerating a cumulative dose of 44 milligrams of
12 protein, or you would react after the 30 milligram
13 dose, the 100 milligram dose. Whereas if you're
14 in the middle group, you would have about an 80
15 percent tolerance or probability of tolerating
16 that amount. If you're in that high group, you
17 actually have 95 percent. So, most likely, you
18 would tolerate that with no difficulty.

19 Looking at higher dose levels. So, now,
20 this would be somebody who would respond after the
21 300 milligram dose. And what you see is in that
22 low group, only 10 percent would tolerate that,

1 whereas in the moderate group, about a third, and
2 in that high tolerance group, you actually have
3 about 75 percent of them, could tolerate this dose
4 with no problem.

5 So, we then went on and looked at some
6 other things. One is, could we predict early on
7 in children whether or not they were going to
8 develop peanut allergy? And this comes from 293
9 subjects out of our CoFAR2 Natural History study,
10 where we looked at epitope profiling, using the
11 Epitope plus peanut specific IgE, or using the
12 standard peanut specific IgE in the Ara h 1, 2,
13 and 3. And what we wanted to see was whether or
14 not we could predict in this group by either 3 to
15 15 months of age, which is when they entered the
16 trial, or 2 years of age, what the outcome would
17 be at 5 years of age. And basically, what you see
18 from this is that if you combine the epitope
19 specific IgE with peanut specific IgE, you could
20 predict at about 95 percent accuracy, who, in
21 fact, would end up with peanut allergy at the
22 5-year challenge.

1 We then also had the opportunity to look
2 at another group of patients, and this was from a
3 cohort of patients from Turkey, where Dr.
4 Sackensen had evaluated these milk allergic
5 children with different forms of milk protein.
6 And we know that about 80 percent of children will
7 outgrow milk allergy. We know that that group can
8 often tolerate baked milk products. But also, as
9 they develop their tolerance, they are able to
10 tolerate less denatured protein.

11 So, she had challenged these patients
12 first to baked the baked milk products. So, a
13 muffin. Those that tolerated that got challenged
14 to a Greek yogurt, which has a fair amount of
15 denaturation of the protein, and then to whole
16 milk. And divided those into the three groups.
17 And we wanted to know, could we profile these and
18 be able to determine who, in fact, would fall into
19 each of these groups.

20 And so, looking at this group, then
21 again, this is a heat map representing that. And
22 as you see, as you go on the heat map from right

1 to left, the baked milk reactive group. So, these
2 are the group that probably are not going to
3 outgrow their milk allergy, had the most IgE
4 binding to a diverse number of epitopes. And as
5 you go across, you see much less in the way of
6 binding. And the figure on the right there just
7 shows you that correlation.

8 And what you can see from this is that,
9 in fact, as you go right to left, there is less
10 IgE binding. But the question was, could we
11 actually pigeonhole them into their particular
12 group? And this is just showing you the outcome
13 of that comparison. And you can see that we are
14 able to determine with about 95 percent accuracy
15 which group each of these patients would fall into
16 based on this algorithm generated with the epitope
17 profiling. And so, you have ability to phenotype
18 these children at about 86 percent with a high
19 sensitivity and specificity, the area under the
20 curve being 0.89.

21 And then finally, one of the things we
22 wanted to see was whether or not we could predict

1 in this trial of milk oral immunotherapy, who
2 would end up developing sustained
3 unresponsiveness. And what was done here was
4 taking the children from this Milk OIT trial.
5 This was one where we used Milk OIT plus or minus
6 omalizumab. In this case, omalizumab had no
7 effect on outcome, great effect on reducing
8 adverse reactions, but no real difference in
9 immunologic response.

10 But again, what we wanted to know could
11 we see who, in fact, was going to develop the
12 sustained unresponsiveness, who was not going to
13 get a good response, and who would only be
14 desensitized? So, we had serra (phonetic)
15 available from 47 of the 55 children that were in
16 this, who had completed this trial. 94 percent of
17 them passed the 10-gram milk oral food challenge
18 at the end of the trial. Of that group, they then
19 went off all immunotherapy for eight weeks and
20 then were re-challenged to 10 grams. And half of
21 the children were able to tolerate that.

22 So, we then evaluated the IgE and IgG4

1 binding to 66 different milk epitopes. This is
2 using the algorithm for this, we found that there
3 were six epitopes that seemed to give us the best
4 predictive value. And what you see here is with
5 these six, we had an area under the curve of about
6 0.95. This breaks down the whole cohort, but
7 basically we have sensitivity about 87 percent,
8 specificity of 86 percent, and an accuracy about
9 86 percent. So, most patients, as you can see
10 there, were in the correct, or were correctly
11 predicted. This, then all has to be validated.
12 The last two are really things that have just been
13 done under discovery.

14 So, in conclusion, the bead-based
15 epitope assay has been validated as a potential
16 diagnostic biomarker for peanut allergy. This is
17 commercially available from a CLIA certified lab
18 in Pennsylvania, and there's work ongoing to try
19 to do similar validation with milk, egg, wheat,
20 and sesame. The bead-based epitope assay has also
21 been validated as a potential prognostic biomarker
22 for a range threshold of reactivity or

1 accumulative tolerated dose. And again, this is
2 also available from the same lab in Pennsylvania.

3 We then have, at least have discovery
4 phase data suggesting that the bead-based epitope
5 assay may also be useful in predicting the degrees
6 of milk and egg sensitivity. In other words, will
7 they tolerate the unbaked form, cooked form, et
8 cetera? Also, may be very useful for the early
9 identification of infants at risk of developing
10 persistent peanut allergy, milk, or egg. And I
11 think this is especially critical now because
12 there's a lot of evidence suggesting that early
13 intervention in those first few years of life can
14 be very critical.

15 And then also for identifying milk,
16 peanut allergic patients who are more likely to
17 achieve this sustained unresponsiveness or
18 remission compared to those who were likely only
19 to end up with desensitization. And I think this
20 becomes important when you're having those
21 discussions with the patients about going into
22 some form of immunotherapy. And then finally,

1 early studies suggest that the bead-based epitope
2 assay profiling may provide some predictive
3 information regarding the peanut allergic
4 patient's potential for severity of reaction
5 following an accidental ingestion.

6 With that, I just want to acknowledge
7 the people that did a lot of the work, especially
8 our statisticians who do all the machine learning,
9 Mayte Suarez-Farinas and Maria Suprun. A lot of
10 assistance from Bob Getz (phonetic) and Paul
11 Kearny, who were at AllerGenis. And then thanking
12 all the investigators from these various trials
13 who provided us with patient samples to evaluate.

14 Thank you.

15 DR. TOGIAS: Thank you, Hugh. So, our
16 next speaker is Eric Wambre. Now, I will have to
17 apologize to Eric only because your biosketch was
18 not transcribed on time. So, all I can say --

19 DR. WAMBRE: But you know me.

20 DR. TOGIAS: -- is that I know you very
21 well from when you were at Benaroya. But I do
22 know that you're the Associate Director of the

1 Jaffe Food Allergy Institute at the Department of
2 Pediatrics at Mount Sinai. And, of course, that
3 you have a long history of working on T cells and
4 food allergy. So, if that's enough, go ahead.

5 DR. WAMBRE: That's perfect. Thank you.
6 So, good afternoon. So, I would like to thanks
7 Dr. Rabin and also the organizer for giving me
8 this opportunity to talk about prognostic
9 biomarker in food allergy.

10 And I would like to start because it's,
11 I think, one of the last presentations today that
12 I think overall, we can see biomarker as kind of
13 an art, an art of forecasting individual clinical
14 outcome. And a year ago, I had the pleasure to
15 visit Istanbul, where I discovered that over there
16 you can see some people that are reading at the
17 pattern of your coffee cup and to see, to predict
18 your future. And actually, when I was there, I
19 was really impressed about this, and I realized
20 that I was almost doing the same thing, and I was
21 kind of surprised. But at least I would like to
22 highlight one things, one key differences between

1 what is done in Istanbul and what we are doing is
2 clearly that what distinguished the mystical
3 readings of the coffee ground from our biomarker
4 discovery is not just the tools that we employed,
5 but the rigorous validation process we add there,
6 too. And by this, I mean how the extensive
7 clinical research and data analysis we are doing
8 to validate those biomarker.

9 And I would like to start with this, the
10 limitation right now, and at least this is my
11 point of view, but in food allergy, clearly right
12 now, the main limitation is the difficult access
13 to the biological samples for food allergy, and
14 mainly to cover the broad spectrum of the disease
15 severity, because most of the time when you get
16 access to those patients, you want to make sure
17 they are truly food allergic. And the only way
18 right now is food challenged. And this is not
19 easy to get access to all those blood samples
20 covering again the broad spectrum of disease
21 diversity.

22 So, the goal is really to encourage

1 efficient monitoring during the clinical trial.
2 That's where we usually have access to all those
3 samples, and that will head also to have those
4 biomarker validation. So, overall, I think we
5 need to have an increased collaboration between
6 the industry, academia and also the FDA.

7 The other limitation I see is not about
8 the discovery of the biomarker, but mainly about
9 the weakness about financial support to develop
10 the clinical grade prototype. Once we found a
11 potential biomarker, then we need to standardize
12 the assay and we need also to do a lot of
13 technical performance. Looking at the
14 reproducibility sensitivity, this is not really
15 fun to do, but that's very important when we want
16 to validate a biomarker.

17 And finally, the last things that kind
18 of summarize everything, that's also to ensure the
19 transparency and integrity of the road that are
20 used to generate sophisticated analysis. This
21 point mainly came from COVID when we saw a lot of
22 tsunami of data from COVID research. But as

1 system biology rely increasingly on the complex
2 model and graphics, there is a risk that the
3 quality of the underlying raw data is overlooked.
4 And this really emphasized the need for rigorous
5 data validation to prevent incorrect conclusion.

6 So, as prognostic biomarker might also
7 influence, can be also influenced by therapeutic
8 intervention, the distinction between predictive
9 and prognostic marker can be ambiguous. So,
10 overall, we can say that prognostic biomarker
11 really try to forecast disease outcome, while the
12 predictive biomarkers will try to forecast the
13 treatment outcome. And in food allergy,
14 prognostic biomarker can inform about the
15 progression of the disease irrespective of the
16 treatment, specifically trying to predict the
17 likelihood of outgrowing the allergy, the
18 development of tolerance, but also the risk, how
19 severe could be the reaction after an accidental
20 exposure. It also can help to identify the
21 persistence at the severity and whether -- how
22 dangerous could be the food challenge in those

1 patients. And finally, those prognostic biomarker
2 can help clinician to make informed decision about
3 the prevention strategy, disease management, and
4 treatment option.

5 So, currently there is several
6 prognostic biomarkers that have been identified
7 that hold promised and as the previous two talk
8 earlier we showed that the basophil activation
9 test is one the diverse IgE repertoire as well,
10 and this usually reflects the severe on the type.
11 We also observed that the high specific IgE titer
12 could be also used as a prognostic biomarker. The
13 size of the wheel from the skin prick test, also
14 the component testing, the diversity of the
15 allergen that could be involved. And also,
16 finally, there is some report about increased T
17 cells repertoire.

18 Overall, that's not the only one. We
19 have also the allergen specific T cells. A few
20 weeks ago, there was also a very nice paper about
21 the B cells as a potential biomarker to predict
22 the severity. We have gene expression. We have

1 the microbiome metabolome proteome that can really
2 represent putative on the type axis which require
3 however further investigation.

4 So, prognosis biomarker for food allergy
5 are likely to be involved in the disease
6 pathogenesis or the tolerance induction. And as T
7 cells activation and commitment to Th2 lineage
8 precede the main effector phase of the allergic
9 disease, they may represent potentially a very
10 good prognostic biomarker that will inform about
11 the disease progression. This is what I tried to
12 do in the last decade. So, I tried to see whether
13 there was a relationship between the allergen
14 specific T cells and the clinical outcome.

15 And as I said, food allergy is a very
16 (inaudible) disease. It involves
17 kids, teenager, adults, you have
18 different symptoms, the severity
19 vary, the level of IgE. So, that's
20 not an easy task. And as I
21 mentioned earlier, the access of
22 blood samples was really the

1 limitation of investigating this
2 link between T cells and clinical
3 outcome. So, a few years ago, we
4 had this idea of providing immune
5 monitoring as a service to get
6 access to those samples, to those
7 clinicals.

8 So, the goal is really to provide immune
9 monitoring solution tailored for company or
10 organization conducting clinical trial in food
11 allergy. And the goal was to provide them
12 services for basophil activation test or T cell
13 assay or any assay they were looking for. And
14 right now, we are structuring this platform into a
15 non-profit academic research organization within
16 the Mount Sinai. And the goal really is to serve
17 as a central laboratory for mechanistic studies.

18 And overall, we want to take advantage
19 of the biological samples collecting from industry
20 or government sponsored trial, and taking
21 advantage of the patient with clear clinical
22 outcome, and to gain insight into the mechanisms

1 underlying the immune mediated disease.

2 We also want to discover and validate
3 new biomarker and translate this to clinical and
4 drug development. We hope that this will enhance
5 our ability to match the right patient with the
6 right medicine, accelerate the development of the
7 therapy. And also, our goal is to harmonize the
8 methodology to ensure the repository across varied
9 cohort and trial.

10 So, what we've learned from this, so the
11 next couple of slides, it's really a summary of
12 what we observe in blood samples from five
13 different clinical trial. And so, all those
14 patients are most likely your patient and they
15 were all challenged, so they all react to maximum
16 500 milligrams during a screened visit.

17 And the first things we tried to looked
18 was whether T cells could be used as a potential
19 biomarker. And we focus on the Th2A cells. And
20 this is just representative data showing you what
21 we have when we looked at the allergen specific T
22 cells in a non-allergic patient versus a peanut

1 allergic patient. And you can see, looking at the
2 CRTH2 expression which clearly define the Th2A
3 phenotype, as well as the ST2 expression, that if
4 you are non-allergic, if you don't have any peanut
5 allergy at all, you don't have any expression of
6 CRTH2 or ST2 within your peanut reactive T cells.
7 However, if you are allergic, you will have more
8 cells, about 10 to 50 fold higher frequency, and
9 you will have expression of ST2 within the peanut
10 reactive T cells. So, peanut specific Th2A cells
11 are restricted to the peanut allergic individual.

12 The other things is we wanted to see
13 whether the Th2A cells may play a role during the
14 food challenge. So, on figure A, you have an
15 example of a patient that received a whole food
16 challenge and there is only 10 days apart from
17 these two assessments. So, pre-challenge, you see
18 a clear Th2A phenotype on this patient
19 characterized by expression of CRTH2. And if you
20 focus on CD38, this is used as a natural
21 activation marker. And you see that before the
22 challenge, the cells, we only observed 16 percent

1 in this example of activation. However, 10 days
2 after the challenged, now the cells, the T cells
3 were highly activated with 60 percent of the
4 activation. And we also observed a dramatic
5 increase of the frequency in the periphery of
6 those peanut reactive T cells.

7 So, yes, the Th2A cells are, those data
8 suggest that they are involved in the food
9 allergic pathogenesis. Interestingly, looking at
10 the overall Th2A cells, that's on figure D, we
11 also observed that we can see some proof of
12 activation of these subsets. And here we compared
13 the conventional Th2 versus Th2A pre and post.
14 And you see that most of the activation was
15 observed within the Th2A cells.

16 So, then we looked at the heterogeneity
17 of the patient, because one things that strike us
18 is, yes, all the patients were challenged. Yes,
19 all they reacted. However, you see that when you
20 looked at CCR6 and CRTH2, it's not a yes and no
21 response. You have patients that don't have a lot
22 of CRTH2 expression within their peanut reactive T

1 cells. And interestingly, we made the same
2 observation for CCR6. And actually, we observed
3 that the patient with high level of CRTH2 were
4 usually the one with a low level of CCR6, which
5 could be associated with a Th17 like response.

6 So, then when we looked at the peanut
7 specific T cell response, we observed that these
8 cells mainly fall in three T cell subset, the
9 Th2A, the Th2 conventional, but also the Th17
10 cells. And when we looked at the -- we decided to
11 classify the patient based on the level of Th2A
12 cells. So, we defined the patient with a low Th2A
13 level, meaning less than 20 percent Th2A cells as
14 the Th2A low peanut allergic patient. And in
15 contrast, the patient that have more than 20
16 percent of Th2A will be the Th2A high patient.

17 And when we looked at the
18 characteristics of Th2A high versus Th2A low
19 peanut allergic immunotype, we first observed that
20 Th2A high patient have statistically higher
21 frequency of circulating peanut reactive T cells.
22 Interestingly, they also have a statistical

1 difference in term of the peanut specific IgE and
2 IgG4, suggesting a potential functional connection
3 in B cells derived shift from IgE to IgG4.
4 However, we did not observe any differences by
5 looking at the skin pretest.

6 When you talk about biomarker, it's very
7 important to make sure this is stable in a short
8 period of time. So, to do this, you have here an
9 example of a Th2A high peanut allergic patient
10 with a lot of CRTH2 positive cells. And below you
11 have a Th2A low peanut allergic patient with
12 almost no Th2A cells. And you see on the bottom,
13 this is called a river plot. You see, just focus
14 on the red river that depict the Th2A cells. You
15 see that this is stable over time in a short
16 period of time. By short period of time, I mean
17 six to two years. You see that in the toddlers
18 there was no variation over time whether you are
19 Th2A high or Th2A low. And same thing in adult,
20 if we define someone as a Th2A high peanut
21 allergic patient that's maintained. And this is
22 important because we want to make sure we can also

1 use this as a way to have a predictive biomarker
2 during therapy.

3 However, when we plot all the data from
4 the different patient we received, there was
5 differences, we observed differences between age.
6 So, the question, and it's also related to this
7 morning talk, was, is pediatric food allergic
8 patient similar to teenager or even adult?
9 Because you can see that the younger population
10 tend to be Th2A low, while when you are a teenager
11 you tend to be more Th2A high patient. So, then
12 the next question was, is drugs working similarly?
13 And you will see on the next couple of slides.

14 So then how the Th2A cells are impacted
15 during immunotherapy. So, this is just, I wanted
16 to show you a real life in my lab. So, when we
17 receive samples, so we need about 10 milligrams of
18 blood to perform this assay. And this is now
19 within the peanut reactive T cells. So, we
20 received the first samples and you see here about
21 83 percent of Th2A cells characterized by
22 expression of CRTH2 and 161.

1 And then when we receive, at the end of
2 the escalation during Palisad (phonetic) trial, we
3 observe that now the frequency of Th2A cells
4 percentage go down to 23 percent. And at the end
5 we had these samples, we only have 3 percent. And
6 our goal was to predict whether it was at least an
7 active or placebo. And we predicted it was an
8 active patient. And actually, we were right. And
9 just to make sure this is two different pictures,
10 that's not a side effect.

11 So, this is the statistic, the statistic
12 behind that. We had a clear decrease of the
13 peanut specific Th2A cells during Patforia

14 (phonetic) trial while the Th17
15 seems to plateau. And we did the
16 same thing. And once we receive a
17 placebo, usually that's what we
18 have. You have about the same
19 level of Th2A cells, 73 at
20 baseline, 67, 74 at the endpoint.

21 So, we conclude it was a placebo.

22 Actually, we give that to immune. So,

1 this is the statistics. And they say, oh, that's
2 pretty good. After we were unblinded, they say,
3 oh, you're pretty good, but you have one patient,
4 you're wrong. One of the patient was in the
5 active group and I was just, okay. I mean, that's
6 science. But actually, we carefully looked at
7 this patient and first of all, yes, we were wrong,
8 but this patient was also technically a
9 non-responder. You see, that's the one I
10 highlighted in red. This patient, at baseline and
11 the maximum tolerated dose was 10 milligrams. At
12 the exist visit it was 30 milligrams. Didn't
13 reach the primary, neither the secondary endpoint.
14 And when you looked at the raw data, you see that
15 this patient remained a Th2A high patient. So,
16 I'm not sure what happened on this patient because
17 you also see that the IgE level increased
18 dramatically and not the IgG4. But at least we
19 were predictive, also. So, we can also predict
20 who were the non- responder here.

21 The next was about the impact trial.
22 So, now looking at younger patients, those

1 patients were age one to three years old. They
2 receive high dose immunotherapy. And again, we
3 observe this strong correlation between the
4 frequency of peanut specific Th2A cells and IgE
5 level, even at that young age. And here I plot
6 different immune characteristics. We can see that
7 the Th2A high patient were again linked with high
8 level high frequency of peanut reactive T cells.
9 CD154-plus the TH2A high patient were also the one
10 with a high level of peanut IgE, also with high
11 level of peanut IgG4. However, there was no
12 relationship with the maximum dose. But keep in
13 mind that this dose was up to 500 milligrams.

14 What we observed during this trial is
15 then consistent with the entire study was, so, the
16 conclusion of this trial overall, was the lower
17 baseline peanut specific IgE were predictive of
18 sustained unresponsiveness and age also was a
19 factor. The younger the better. The younger
20 patient were the one with a sustained in
21 responsiveness. And when we looked at the Th2A
22 phenotype, we observed that there was an increased

1 likelihood of resistance to tolerance induction by
2 OIT in the Th2A high peanut allergic, meaning that
3 if you are defined as a Th2A high peanut allergic
4 at baseline, you have a benefit, you will have a
5 benefit, but you will be desensitized. However,
6 you won't have remission, meaning that you will
7 lose your benefit when you stop the therapy.

8 You see that in blue. The blue curve
9 reflect the patient that were desensitized and
10 remission sustained benefit. And they were the
11 one that started with the lowest frequency of
12 peanut and the lowest proportion of Th2A while the
13 patient that started that had remission or sorry,
14 they were desensitized. No remission or
15 remission. They always started with the highest
16 level of Th2A.

17 Finally, recently we also looked at a
18 known extract based immunotherapy. This is data
19 from Aravax that are using now epitope to help to
20 desensitize or even induce tolerance in peanut
21 allergy and overall, so this product is called
22 PVX108, and it covers seven synthetic peptide from

1 RH1 and RH2. And the goal of peptide
2 immunotherapy is to bypass the immune mediated
3 response and to directly target the T cells. And
4 so, this trial focused on the efficacy. That was
5 a phase one. And first of all, it's a very safe
6 approach. You see that even the basophil, there
7 was no basophil activation ex vivo using PVX108.
8 There was no adverse events during the trial.

9 However, what we observed is a strong
10 decrease of the peanut specific Th2A response.
11 And interestingly, this response even went down
12 after the therapy stopped. So, this therapy
13 stopped after week 21 and they followed those
14 patients after 18 months and we see the Th2A cells
15 decrease. However, the question I would like to,
16 it's an open question that I would like to address
17 was, do the changes in upstream biomarker can
18 occur before they are observable measured clinical
19 benefit? Here you specifically target the T cells
20 and we don't know what will be the impact on the
21 IgE and IgG4, because we bypass that. So, can
22 modulation of the T cell response can predict

1 before the benefit of this therapy? So, this is
2 an open question. We will learn soon. But it
3 means that sometime you should also wait a little
4 bit. If you see a change in the T cells and no
5 clinical benefit, it's probably because of the
6 kinetic, the half-life of the IgE or how the IgG4
7 will be elicited. So, open question.

8 So, I will stop here. Just my
9 conclusion. Overall, it's clearly the next few
10 years will be critical times to further evaluate
11 prognostic biomarker currently showing promise,
12 while continuing to utilize advance in high
13 throughput technologies and computational biology
14 to help optimize the most promising biomarker.
15 And by working together with patients, physicians,
16 scientists, industry, FDA, NIH, we can envision
17 the discovery and all the confirmation of several
18 biomarkers in the near future.

19 I would like to thanks my previous team
20 from the Benaroya Research Institute that
21 generates most of the data that I just show you
22 here. I also would like to thanks funding support

1 from the NIH, ITN, and the Food Allergy Research
2 and Education. Also, the access to those precious
3 samples from clinical trial, from those different
4 companies that run those clinical trial. And
5 finally, I would like to thank my new team at
6 Sinai, people from the Jaffe Food Allergy
7 Institute, and also the people from the Immune
8 Monitoring Center and the new academic research
9 organization that we will launch in two months
10 called OCAM (phonetic) Immune. And thank you,
11 everyone.

12 DR. GUERRERIO: Thank you, Eric. So,
13 we're going to move to our last speaker, who is
14 Wayne Shreffler. He's going to talk about
15 cellular biomarkers for response to AIT for food
16 allergies. And few words about Wayne. He's the
17 Chief of Pediatric Allergy and Immunology and
18 Director of the Food Allergy Center at
19 Massachusetts General Hospital. He's also an
20 investigator at the Center for Immunology and
21 Inflammatory Disease and the Food Allergy Science
22 Initiative. Received his MD and PhD from New York

1 University, and he did his fellowship in allergy
2 at Mount Sinai.

3 DR. SHREFFLER: Thanks, Alkis. Great to
4 be part of this symposium. Thanks, Dr. Rabin and
5 all the organizers for inviting me and actually
6 just for the vision of doing this, I think it's an
7 incredibly important thing, and it's great to see
8 FDA interested in engaging on this topic. And the
9 need for biomarkers, I think, is, as someone
10 specifically focused on food allergy, but not
11 limited to that, certainly, really important, all
12 the way from clinical outcomes to better
13 predictors.

14 So, when I got the first sort of note of
15 the title and it said cellular biomarkers, I
16 thought, oh, great, I'll talk about basophils. I
17 used to do some basophil work, and then I saw Alex
18 was on the program, and I thought, okay, well,
19 that's clearly not going to be my topic for today.
20 And then I thought, well, I'll talk about Th2A and
21 pTh2 T cells. And I saw Eric was on the program,
22 I said, oh, God, okay, that won't be the tack I

1 should take, either.

2 So, what I'm going to try to do is, this
3 is last and least, because this is an area, I
4 think, in the biology and food allergy right now,
5 where we are furthest from a validation of the
6 kinds of things that I'm going to talk about,
7 although I will talk about peTh2s. But that is, I
8 think, an important aspect also of biomarker
9 research. And for those of us who have condemned
10 ourselves or didn't have the wit to do high-level
11 immunology in really cutting and informative
12 models, we relegate ourselves to trying to
13 understand and get insight into the biology by
14 looking at the cells that we can access from our
15 patients in the settings of interventions, as you
16 all know.

17 So, disclosures here, none particularly
18 directly relevant. Just a quick note on the
19 methodology that I won't have time to go into.
20 And so, a lot of this is going to get glossed
21 over, but we can talk about it afterward. There's
22 a lot of different ways already some of the data

1 that you've seen have attempted to interrogate
2 something about antigen specific T cells, ranging
3 from tetramer selection. We haven't seen too much
4 of that in today's session, to a lot of activation
5 and enriching for putatively antigen-specific T
6 cells on the basis of their activation state post
7 either in vitro most often, or sometimes in vivo
8 exposure to antigen. And that's a good method in
9 many ways. It's the method that we have
10 available. It's been refined a lot over time, but
11 it is subject to a lot of, and a lot of bystander
12 activation that we have to really keep in mind at
13 all times.

14 So, by way of overview, I am going to
15 obviously limit my scope for time and just because
16 it's what I'm most familiar with on T cell
17 subsets, and I'm going to talk in the context of
18 OIT trial data. I'm going to talk about the CD4
19 subsets that I see sort of the most convergence in
20 the literature around that I think that we're
21 getting kind of on the way toward within the
22 adaptive compartment, understanding their

1 plausible role in immune pathogenesis. So,
2 potentially someday actually surrogates, but more
3 immediately correlative observational data. And
4 so, their potential for either diagnostic or
5 monitoring biomarkers.

6 So, these include both dynamic it
7 induced changes such as the ones we've just seen
8 from Eric in the Th2A or pTh2 subset, as well as
9 potential baseline differences. And I'm going in
10 order of kind of the strength of the evidence to
11 the weaker evidence as we go.

12 And finally, I'll throw in a teaser of
13 unpublished data and try to promote my fellow
14 who'll be presenting later in the meeting for
15 those of you that are attending that as well. I
16 think looking at, I think really interesting,
17 again, in the spirit of the discovery part of why
18 we look at biomarkers and the potential for that
19 as a biomarker for iatrogenic eosinophilic
20 gastrointestinal disease.

21 So, T cells of course exit in their
22 naive state after education and then progress

1 after antigen engagement through a series of
2 differentiating steps and lose multi potential and
3 acquire more and more specific effect reflection,
4 function rather. And as they do that, their
5 homing capacity changes. So, it goes from primary
6 lymphoid homing to homing to peripheral sites.
7 And that can affect our ability, again, for those
8 who've condemned ourselves to looking at a lot of
9 peripheral blood in humans, what we can actually
10 see. And along the way they also have changes to
11 their surface markers some of which are directly
12 indicative of differentiation, others of which are
13 indicative of function.

14 I'm highlighting CD27 because we know
15 that's important as a marker of terminal
16 differentiated effector cells such as those Th2As.
17 And these are the subsets of cells that I'm going
18 to talk about, the Tfh13s, the Th2A's, these
19 Th17-like cells, and Tregs and especially type 2
20 deviated Tregs.

21 So, starting with this Tfh subset. So,
22 we know that follicular helpers are obviously

1 adapted to provide B cell help for antibody
2 production. We've heard already from others about
3 that. Tfh13 are a subset that are uniquely
4 required in a couple of mouse models, at least,
5 using very sophisticated techniques of
6 lineage-specific deletion for the generation of
7 high affinity IgE and consequent food anaphylaxis
8 in those models. And they're also strongly
9 associated with human disease. And I'll show a
10 little bit of data on that.

11 Their expression of 21 is a little bit
12 lower than non-type 2 Tfh's and their really, sort
13 of, signature hallmark is high production of
14 IL-13, but also other Th2 cytokines, although IL-5
15 is generally lower. Here's data from Stephanie
16 Eisenberg's paper actually showing this population
17 of PD-1 high CXCR5 positive cells, and comparing
18 them in an LPS induced inflammatory state in mouse
19 with *Alternaria*. And you can see this emergence
20 of this IL-13, IL-4 positive population within
21 that Tfh gate that is in the top-right panel,
22 obviously markedly enhanced and induced in the

1 Alternaria model. And you can see things such as
2 in the middle bottom the differences in IL-21
3 production, or in the right their expression of
4 GATA3.

5 We can see these also in a population of
6 patients with peanut allergy at baseline
7 undergoing about to undergo peanut OIT, that is
8 oral immunotherapy among the CD154 positive. This
9 is 20-hour in vitro stimulated. Again, getting
10 back to that bystander issue where we could in
11 fact observe in this UMAP distribution some
12 segregation of different Th2 subsets, including
13 these Tfh13s in the top, highlighted there, and in
14 fact show that the correlation between serum IgE
15 from those patients to IL-4 production in those
16 cells, but not, for example, by comparison in Th2A
17 subsets in the bottom two panels here, or other
18 CD4 subsets that we looked at were correlated.
19 So, really correlative data supporting in humans
20 that that is the subset producing IL-4 that's
21 important for driving IgE production.

22 Th2As, I'll be brief because you've just

1 heard so much about them, and I think we're
2 already supposed to be in our panel discussion.
3 These are circulating terminally differentiated
4 effector memory cells. They're really highly
5 differentiated, low proliferative potential,
6 presumably, although not a lot of direct evidence
7 around that, strongly associated with seasonal hay
8 fever as well as IgE food allergy, by Eric. They
9 are CCR6 negative, as he just showed us, CD161
10 positive, 49D positive.

11 Interestingly, they have, actually, a
12 lot of features of tissue resident memory cells,
13 which if we have time, we'll talk a little bit
14 more about. But really, in terms of their
15 functional characteristic, what is impressive, I
16 think, is their high multipotent production of Th2
17 cytokines, including IL-4, IL-13 and IL-5, and in
18 human IL-9, probably not so in mouse, where it
19 seems like these are really the equivalent of high
20 IL-5 CCR8 positive effectors in most Murine Models
21 of Allergic Inflammation, by my read of the
22 literature at least, and I think maybe lacking

1 actually in some food allergy models.

2 They also acquire a really interesting
3 innate like capacity to be sensitive to alarmins
4 through upregulation of IL-25 receptor and IL-33
5 receptor, and have a really interesting, and this
6 is one of the kind of features that is reminiscent
7 of resident memory cells, especially in the skin
8 that have been described, this kind of
9 upregulation of cassette of (phonetic) genes that
10 provides for them capacity to both sense and
11 metabolize lipids, including hematopoietic PGD
12 synthase, rather, et cetera.

13 So, Eric has already shown us this, but
14 greatly expanded in circulation among patients
15 with hay fever, activated and expanded in season
16 of exposure and activated post in the case of
17 peanut allergic patients, a challenge 10 days
18 later, as he's already shown us. This phenotype
19 is remarkably similar, and Eric made pains to
20 point that out in his first publication in 2017 to
21 work by Cal Prussin when he was still at NIH,
22 characterizing this population of what he called

1 pathogenic effector, Th2s expanded and associated
2 with the eosinophilic gastrointestinal disorders.

3 These features in this table, I kind of
4 challenge anyone to really find things that
5 differentiate circulating Th2As, as we've come to
6 coin and term them, from these tissue resident
7 pTh2 cells. They're highly similar, including,
8 really, their pattern of chemokine receptor
9 expression, their transcription factor profile,
10 maybe some differences in Eomes (phonetic), but
11 really a lot of overlap in phenotype. And this,
12 and, sorry -- in Calman's work, what he emphasized
13 was really, it was repetitive TCR stimulation. He
14 could replicate this in vitro under Th2 polarizing
15 conditions. That repetitive engagement of TCR was
16 sufficient to drive the phenotype of these cells
17 in vitro, and suggested that the nature of
18 allergic inflammation in the setting of
19 eosinophilic gastrointestinal disease, or in
20 asthma, or in nasal polyposis, or in atopic
21 dermatitis, all of contexts where these cells have
22 been observed, lent itself, perhaps, to chronic

1 stimulation and the acquisition of this phenotype.

2 However, I think the other strain in the
3 literature that's really interesting when thinking
4 about these cells comes from labs that had studied
5 early on, so called Th9 cells. And these are
6 cells actually, that in several labs can be
7 induced by co-culture with IL-4 and TGF. And the
8 model that those groups, kind of, have been
9 pursuing is that this is a phenotype that is
10 acquired with tissue residents and actually may
11 not be so dependent upon repetitive TCR
12 stimulation as the model of pTh2s and yet have a
13 lot of phenotypic overlap.

14 And so, I think, again, trying to
15 understand the biology from what we can observe
16 suggests that there may be multiple pathways to
17 acquire at least some of these phenotypic
18 attributes in the context of allergy. And one of
19 the first observations actually before, back in
20 2014, although people in asthma were describing
21 these cells, it wasn't really on the food allergy
22 landscape, at least not to my mind or

1 recollection.

2 But this paper by Helen Brough and
3 Gideon Lack's group compared using something
4 called a microarray, which I thought was going to
5 land really well until Hugh pulled out like the
6 spots data and glass microarray slides. So, using
7 this older technique, a bulk, bear in mind,
8 technique, nevertheless, the really differentially
9 expressed genes kind of have these features,
10 certainly suggestive and characteristic of Th2A,
11 pTh2 cells, including hematopoietic PGD synthase
12 and high levels of IL-9, IL-5, 13, even in excess
13 or above IL-4. Just comparing atopic but
14 non-allergic to peanut allergic patients after
15 stimulation in vitro and sorting of CD154, CD69
16 double positive cells.

17 And Cecilia Berin actually began, along
18 with other labs showing kind of clinical
19 correlation not in the context of OIT but just at
20 baseline between Th2 effector function and things
21 like eliciting dose at baseline. So, suggesting
22 that, remember, this is not the population of

1 cells per se, at least to the extent to which you
2 accept IL-4 percentage in surrogate for Th2As.
3 Buyer beware, there would be Tfh's in here as well,
4 but they're very rare. So, to the extent that you
5 sort of accept that as a marker of that phenotype,
6 a correlation between that and clinical
7 sensitivity with something seemingly as crude as
8 just a graded food challenge.

9 And our lab has been really interested
10 in this as well, but initially really, kind of,
11 went into it with trepidation, that sort of
12 stratifying patients on something like what
13 threshold of allergen they react at and looking
14 for non-IgE dependent reasons for that.

15 Certainly, there's lots of understanding, and
16 you've heard from Alex indirectly through the
17 basophil and Hugh directly through studies of IgE
18 epitope binding pattern differences in
19 diversification, some of that explanation.

20 But this suggests to us, and I'll show a
21 little bit more on why I think so, that there are
22 IgE independent variables that influence that

1 sensitivity as well. Another example of the kind
2 of clinical prognostic biomarker utility of an
3 assay like this when comparing baseline baked egg
4 challenge patients, all egg allergic but
5 differentiated by their reactivity to baked egg
6 versus tolerance to that, a well-known way of
7 stratifying phenotype and food allergy for those
8 in the audience that don't sort of live and
9 breathe food allergy stuff.

10 And so, we also showed in a threshold
11 type study comparing patients that react at low
12 versus high threshold, these differences in 154
13 reactivity and a phenotype shown here by bulk RNA
14 seq. Again, with highlights of this peTh2
15 phenotype. Our friend hematopoietic PGD synthase
16 PPARgamma, IL-9, IL-5. But also, markers of a
17 Th17-like phenotype, certainly well represented
18 within that 154 positive reactive population and
19 upregulated in the low dose reactive patients
20 versus the hyporeactive patients. If you put them
21 in culture and stimulate them with autologous
22 monocytes, they certainly will make Th2 antibody

1 nicely, including IL-9 in an antigen specific sort
2 of way with equal, no difference between the
3 groups, if you polyclonally stimulate.

4 And although they have these
5 transcriptional features that look IL-17-like, we
6 didn't get really any IL-17 protein secreted to
7 speak of, or IL 22, which was also
8 transcriptionally upregulated. So, suggesting
9 that they have some of this sort of, maybe not a
10 fully licensed phenotype in terms of their Th of
11 17 characteristic.

12 But the other thing we did in this
13 paper, and I think this is something we haven't
14 heard too much of yet today, is to use TCR
15 sequencing as a means of trying to hone in and to
16 some extent overcome the bystander problem that
17 one has when you sort of don't want to use
18 tetramers, don't want to bias yourself or limit
19 yourself to certain HLA restriction and are
20 stimulating with whole antigens. And that is that
21 we compared by bulk TCR sequencing the sequences
22 that were enriched in the 154 reactive cells

1 versus the resting cells and met a statistical
2 threshold for that enrichment and then used those
3 sequences as a way to interrogate the rest of the
4 bulk data.

5 Very briefly, if you do that, these
6 sequences indeed look meaningfully enriched for
7 motifs suggestive of specificity, and they are
8 overabundant as clonotypes, now in the reactive
9 versus the hyporeactive, correlating with what you
10 see if you just look at CD154. Now we also, from
11 the same patients just sorted out effectors in
12 Tregs, show that they have good contrasting
13 phenotype, including evidence of functional
14 suppression, and then use the sort of validated
15 enriched for specificity clonotypic information to
16 look at those compartments and see, whoops, sorry,
17 that the reactive patients, that the difference,
18 what distinguishes them is the expansion of that
19 effector population, not differences in their
20 underlying regulatory population.

21 So, again, this is in the category of
22 prognostic biomarker as something that suggests

1 low-level reactivity among patients. And here to
2 me is one of the important punchlines. It has no
3 correlation with IgE titer. So, this is
4 independent of what's driving IgE. It's not about
5 the Tfh's. It's a different mechanism suggested.
6 We hypothesize that it has to do with how these
7 cells can drive mastocytosis and influence gut
8 barrier.

9 So, Tregs, quickly, allergen specific
10 FOXP3 play a critical role, we know, in oral
11 tolerance, certainly in animal models and from
12 human mutations, accidents of nature as well.
13 There are different flavors of regulatory cells,
14 the follicular regulatory, that really effectively
15 suppress IgE in a number of model systems.
16 RORgamma-T that can suppress Th2 inflammation at
17 vector sites, and GATA3 positive, which Talal
18 Chatila showed really nicely some years ago, that
19 can exacerbate, in fact, Th2 inflammation.

20 CD137 is a marker that will somewhat
21 enrich for Treg. It depends a little bit on how
22 long the activation is in in-vitro and what the

1 context is. But a marker of note in kind of this
2 discussion of biomarkers. This is from Talal's
3 paper, really. All I've shown here is the human
4 data, where he shows really nicely that there's
5 not only a reduction in overall FOXP3 CD25s, but
6 there's a bias, an increase, actually in this
7 phenotype of IL-4 GATA3 positive Tregs in disease
8 versus healthy controls.

9 So, along with that, some evidence from
10 milk specific, but I just want to highlight that
11 this is milk specific that have been expanded in
12 vitro for several days. And I'll come back to why
13 I think that's important. We see again, within
14 the Th2 module score population, a sizable Treg-
15 like population as well, smaller in these roughly
16 10-year-olds to Eric's age dependent thing, not
17 two-year-olds. So, already a good complement of
18 Tfhs, as well as Th2As. These are basically all
19 Th2A high patients, but also this regulatory
20 population.

21 And interestingly, if you look at their
22 TCR repertoire, because this is single cell RNA

1 seq data with matched TCR, they're really much
2 more polyclonal and there's no overlap in their
3 repertoire with other CD4 compartments. Cecilia
4 Berin, I think, has done as much to address the
5 paradox of why we see bulk Treg increases in
6 multiple studies of OIT and yet have failed to see
7 antigen specific signature increases by showing
8 actually that there are a couple populations of
9 FOXP3 positive cells, some with more functional
10 activity, suppressive activity, some with less,
11 but high levels of FOXP3 expression that are
12 emerge in a bystander like fashion dependent on
13 IL-2. And lastly, the Th17 population, which we
14 think corresponds to the CCR6 positive group.

15 So, to sort of sum up this part, the
16 response biomarkers I think that we can really
17 begin to have some confidence in, are limited to
18 really this profound suppression of Th2A that Eric
19 has just shown us. There is evidence also for
20 effector cell exhaustion energy. I think that
21 essentially is where some of these cells go.
22 There is some global expansion of Treg from

1 several papers, but we don't really see an
2 expansion of antigen specific Tregs, and we don't
3 see suppression of Tfh13s.

4 At baseline in terms of predictive. So,
5 Eric has shown you the low Th2A story. Cecilia
6 Berin has similar data. We have similar data that
7 it's really the treatment responders that have
8 strong suppression of Th2A. And Cecilia's data on
9 Tregs, which I won't have time to go into, shows
10 this global expansion. This is our data showing
11 within the CD154 positive or 137, not shown here.
12 There's not really an OIT induced difference.
13 There's a little bit of an expansion, an IL-10
14 signature within these Tfh-like Tregs, but it's
15 not significant in this small population. It's
16 something to look at more.

17 So, the predictive phenotype, is there
18 one? We have a little bit of data to suggest that
19 there are not well mapped to these specific CD4
20 subsets, but an inflammatory signature, a T cell
21 activation signature, and one other thing, which
22 was high levels of GPR15 expression among patients

1 who failed to have treatment response in OIT.

2 That's really caught us our eye, because
3 we have a story emerging about GPR15 in the
4 setting of EOE. GPR15 is associated with peTh2
5 cells that are really unique to EOE, active versus
6 remission. If we take advantage of Eric's
7 observation of CD38 upregulation, and this is what
8 Caitlin will show on Saturday, we can see, in
9 fact, that there is an upregulation of CD38
10 positive GPR15 positive cells within active EOE,
11 and that these markers, sort of, exploiting this
12 phenotype, begin to approach some fairly
13 impressive AUCs when discriminating active versus
14 no EOE, and even when discriminating between
15 active and remission disease state.

16 And I'll leave it at that, just with
17 your thanks. And the point that biomarker work is
18 also sort of about discovering those new
19 biomarkers.

20 Thank you.

21 DR. TOGIAS: Thank you, Wayne. Why
22 don't you stay here? We have, unfortunately, only

1 15 minutes.

2 DR. RABIN: We have a little bit longer.

3 DR. TOGIAS: A little bit longer.

4 That's wonderful.

5 DR. RABIN: Because our speaker will be
6 here at about 5:15 or so.

7 DR. TOGIAS: So please, all speakers
8 come here, and we don't have enough seats, so --

9 DR. RABIN: We'll bring one up.

10 DR. TOGIAS: -- grab a chair and we'll
11 be fine. But before we start this discussion, we
12 had a discussion with the FAB Alliance Group that
13 has a lot of stakeholders related to biomarkers in
14 the food allergy arena. And what I'd like to do,
15 and we've had an agreement to do that, is ask one
16 of their representatives in this case, is, I
17 think, Kari Brown to join us and actually give us
18 a couple of minutes of some thoughts about where
19 they're coming from when it comes to the
20 biomarkers of food allergies. So, Kari? Yeah.
21 Please.

22 DR. RABIN: Excuse me. Right before you

1 do that, a number of people online and here have
2 asked whether or not slides are going to be
3 available or the recording is going to be
4 available. The answer to slides is no. The
5 answer to the recording is yes. It'll be
6 available in about two and a half to three weeks.
7 My guess is if it's like we do with our advisory
8 committee and such, it will be on the same webpage
9 that you use to register for the meeting.

10 DR. BROWN: Great. Great. Thanks for
11 giving us a chance to speak real quick. So, I'm
12 Kari Brown. I'm with Revelo Therapeutics, but I'm
13 speaking today as a member of the FAB Alliance.
14 So, that's the Food Allergy Biomarker Alliance.
15 So, this alliance was actually formed quite
16 organically from multiple people in this room who
17 identified the issue with having limited options
18 for determining efficacy in food allergy clinical
19 trials.

20 So, the Alliance is a group of
21 individuals across academia. So, researchers,
22 clinicians, people in industry, in clinical

1 development groups, and also in different
2 biomarker approaches, also people from patient
3 advocacy groups. So, anyone is able to join who
4 is interested. We are approach agnostic. We
5 recognize that approaches in terms of identifying
6 viable (phonetic) biomarkers for determining
7 efficacy in food allergy clinical trials, could be
8 algorithmic. They could integrate multiple
9 biomarkers, and they also could potentially just
10 decrease the need of the volume of double-blind
11 placebo-controlled food challenges, and not
12 necessarily eliminate the need.

13 So, really, our goal is to come together
14 across, I would say, silos. Sometimes it tends to
15 be right in academia and in funding. Government
16 funding in academia may have more communication in
17 their research industry and regulators may have
18 more communication in their silos. So, we're
19 really working to bring groups together across
20 these walls and have communication across the
21 groups as possible to move this forward.

22 So, if this is of interest to anybody,

1 you're welcome to speak with me or Thomas Wilmers
2 has been doing a lot of the coordination of this
3 as well. So, if you would like to join the
4 effort, we are volunteer, non-funded, but we are
5 all trying to move this forward. So, this, today
6 is a big step in terms of bringing multiple groups
7 together in the room together. So, I think the
8 Alliance really appreciates that initiative and
9 thanks for giving us the chance to speak.

10 DR. TOGIAS: Thank you, Kari. Why don't
11 you take a seat?

12 DR. BROWN: Thank you.

13 DR. TOGIAS: So, thank you, everybody.
14 These were great talks, great presentations, and
15 so we probably should have some discussion. But
16 before we start, we are at this stage where a lot
17 of great data have been presented, a lot of things
18 are moving forward. What's in my mind, and I'll
19 ask the first question is, okay, where do we go
20 from here in terms of bringing those things
21 together, those observations together? Do you, in
22 your mind, have some thoughts about this as

1 opposed to just doing the wonderful research you
2 are doing? What will bring this research together
3 in a way that will produce the basis for moving
4 forward with biomarkers? So, who wants to take
5 this? Erik, go for it.

6 DR. WAMBRE: As I mentioned earlier, the
7 way to really push those biomarker is having
8 people running clinical trial. I mean, I'm
9 thinking about the industry or government pushing
10 those biomarker. Not forcing, but at least having
11 some mechanistic study along with the clinical
12 studies. I think that will help pushing the
13 basophil test or diversity of IgE repertoire. The
14 T cells, all the T cells. And much more. There
15 is much more biomarker. If they are always
16 associated with clinical samples with very clear
17 patient outcome and clinical data, I think that
18 will help.

19 And the other things, as I mentioned,
20 and actually, Alexandra Santos highlighted that,
21 is, when you have a biomarker, you need to do a
22 lot of validation, sensitivity, robustness, et

1 cetera, et cetera. This take time and money. And
2 I agree, it's not fun. You have to do it
3 sometimes 10 times the assay to make sure it's
4 stable, and you have the same conclusion, but
5 usually nobody want to sponsor that. And I think
6 that's one issue.

7 DR. TOGIAS: Yeah. Thanks, Erik.
8 Somebody else wants to add to this?

9 DR. SAMPSON: I'll just second what Erik
10 said, but also, if there was some way to get some
11 kind of a repository of all the different samples
12 that have been around for these various clinical
13 trials, it would be a great way to be able to do a
14 lot of validation on some of these assays.

15 DR. TOGIAS: It's a good point. Okay,
16 well, that's my question, so let's see what the
17 audience has to ask. Steve?

18 DR. TILLES: Since nobody else is going
19 to ask a question. Steve Tilles working at
20 Aimmune Therapeutics, and this is actually, I
21 think, primarily for Dr. Santos, but be interested
22 in the rest of the panel's thoughts as well. And

1 Dr. Guerrerio talked about the unmet need of food
2 allergy. And we've sort of had a consensus in
3 this group that double- blind, placebo-controlled
4 food challenges aren't necessarily a wonderful
5 thing to have in every trial.

6 I will say that at the podium at many
7 meetings, a lot of thought-leaders think there's
8 no problem with that. And we give epinephrine
9 fairly routinely during these challenges. So, I
10 really feel like this is a big, almost existential
11 threat in some ways to innovation reaching the
12 masses. And so, my question is, with this elegant
13 presentation and you proclaiming that this would
14 be transferable at experienced sites, how far are
15 we from this being either a tabletop option or at
16 least widespread so it can be used as a surrogate
17 outcome in pivotal trials?

18 DR. SANTOS: Thank you very much for
19 your question. It's difficult to know how far we
20 are, because I think there's a lot of boxes to
21 tick and people to convince, I think. But I think
22 from a scientific evidence point of view, and

1 maybe one of the things, and adding to the
2 previous, actually answering the previous
3 question, maybe we can look at, looking at the
4 evidence we have and synthesizing this evidence to
5 see whether it answers the requirements to
6 actually be able to use the basophil activation
7 test, for example, as a surrogate endpoint for a
8 clinical trial.

9 The oral food challenges are wonderful
10 in many ways, and they are safe and they are
11 important for some patients, but they do, could
12 create selection bias in the studies, not only
13 from the clinician's point of view, because there
14 are patients that we wouldn't dare challenge, but
15 from the patients as well, because some patients,
16 which are not necessarily the most severe, don't
17 want to undergo a challenge for one reason or
18 another. So, I think that it would be really
19 helpful for other reasons as well.

20 I think that it would be important to
21 maybe synthesize the evidence that we have. Of
22 course, it's not a perfect, and it's not the same

1 as a clinical outcome, and that's absolutely fine.
2 And I think we can make a list of and be conscious
3 of the limitations and address them and see
4 whether there is good enough to be able to do more
5 trials, and then also to increase the
6 applicability of using these treatments in
7 clinical practice, because in clinical trials,
8 challenges have a lot of challenges and create
9 selection bias into clinical studies and so on.
10 But I think it's much more difficult to convince a
11 patient to do a treatment in real life and see
12 whether treatment is working by doing repeated
13 challenges. So, I think this is a bigger problem,
14 and I think we need to be pragmatic as well, and
15 make it easier for our patients to actually have
16 solutions for them.

17 DR. TOGIAS: Ron?

18 DR. RABIN: So, question from the crowd
19 and from me as well, about the BAT. Dr. Santos,
20 first of all, why do you think that you get the
21 differences that you get depending upon the food
22 allergen, peanut versus egg, for example? So,

1 that's question number one. Why don't you answer
2 that and then I'll go on.

3 DR. SANTOS: Thank you. So, it's
4 interesting because from the existing literature
5 on IgE tests, for example, the cutoffs that have
6 been identified over time are different for
7 different foods. And because patients are
8 allergic to one food and not the other, I still
9 believe that diagnostic tests are allergen
10 specific. Having said that, and having applied
11 the same method for the basophil activation test
12 to different foods for peanut, egg, and I can
13 disclose preliminary analysis we've done for milk,
14 the optimal concentration is 100 nanograms per ML.
15 I don't know why that is. If there's any
16 brilliant mind in the room. So, the optimal
17 concentration to be able to. So, this is the
18 concentration at which the test distinguishes best
19 between allergic and non-allergic. So, there are
20 some similarities that I don't fully understand.
21 This is why we are doing separate studies.

22 In the end, we may possibly come to a

1 conclusion that actually you need the same
2 concentration of allergen, and the cutoffs are not
3 that different. So, we can extrapolate to other
4 foods, which I think, from a practical standpoint,
5 would be very beneficial, because doing all these
6 studies take years and we need to diagnose
7 patients today to different foods. So, that would
8 be very helpful. But we have been doing these
9 studies separately on the assumption that
10 allergens perform differently and the diagnostic
11 tests need to be validated separately.

12 So, far, as I said, the concentration,
13 the optimal concentration, is the same for the
14 studies so far. The cut offs are not exactly the
15 same, but not that different. So, we'll see.

16 DR. RABIN: All right, my second
17 question has to do with how you perform the assay,
18 because, as I understand it, there are two
19 different ways that one could perform the assay,
20 which is using the patient or the subject's own
21 basophils, which is most of the data that you
22 presented, is that correct?

1 DR. SANTOS: Yes, that's correct.

2 DR. RABIN: Or with a cell line. Okay.

3 And that when you use the patient's basophils, the
4 attraction is that you're kind of integrating the
5 cellular responsiveness. But if you're using a
6 cell line, for example, then really you're looking
7 at affinity, avidity, and those sorts of things.
8 And I can't remember. I think that you did some
9 comparison studies with the same sera, and you
10 still found that using the patient's basophils was
11 better?

12 DR. SANTOS: Yes.

13 DR. RABIN: Gave you better ROCs. Is
14 that correct?

15 DR. SANTOS: Yes, that's correct. So, I
16 think in an ideal world, if we can have both, I
17 think the basophil activation test is still closer
18 to the clinical phenotype than any passive
19 sensitization assay, because it uses the patient
20 untouched blood that contains defector cells and
21 the antibodies in the same amount and affinity,
22 all the characteristics that are in the patient.

1 So, that is, in my opinion, and in my experience,
2 it's best than using any passive sensitization
3 assay, which is dependent on the cellular system,
4 which is not from the patient. And, yeah, as you
5 said, it's a functional test of the antibodies
6 rather than the whole integrated system.

7 We have compared, for peanut only, we
8 have directly compared the basophil activation
9 test with the mast cell activation test, and we
10 have seen that they are both in the specificity is
11 similar. So, when a test is positive, it predicts
12 peanut allergy with a similar specificity. But
13 the basophil activation test is much more
14 sensitive, so you have a lot more false negatives
15 in the mast cell activation test. The mast cell
16 activation test, however, has one advantage, which
17 is to provide results for patients with
18 non-responding basophils. So, these patients that
19 have the IgE mediated pathway sort of shut down,
20 then if we transfer those serum onto another cell,
21 they can elicit a response. But still, if I have
22 to choose, I would choose a basophil activation

1 test for a biomarker for food allergy.

2 DR. RABIN: Okay. Thank you.

3 DR. TOGIAS: Corinne? Oh, I'm sorry.

4 There was somebody. Okay, you guys decide.

5 DR. KEET: I guess my question is, if
6 we're thinking about biomarkers of response for
7 immunotherapy and thinking about sort of what was
8 discussed this morning about how we think it may
9 be in the causal pathway, whether we think there
10 needs to be coherence, especially if we're looking
11 at blood biomarkers between the different methods
12 of immunotherapy in terms of the predictors of
13 response to therapy. Given that, maybe we think
14 the endpoint of desensitization may be similar, or
15 whether you think that actually that's not the
16 case and that we should be pursuing OIT biomarkers
17 and SLIT biomarkers and EPIT biomarkers and
18 whatever else we discover.

19 DR. TOGIAS: It's a good question. Who
20 wants to take it?

21 DR. SAMPSON: Go ahead.

22 DR. WAMBRE: At least just one. Just

1 one comment. I think it depends where in the
2 cascade the biomarker is. As I mentioned, if you
3 use DNA, vaccine, or peptide immunotherapy,
4 probably your best readout will be the T cells.
5 However, if you want to block, if you want to use
6 IgG4 as a new therapy, I think you should look at
7 IgE and the basophil test. So, I think it really
8 depends of what is your main target, I think.

9 DR. TOGIAS: Yeah.

10 DR. SAMPSON: Yeah. I mean, very
11 preliminary data with the peptide assay, you do
12 see different responses to different epitopes when
13 you look at OIT versus epic versus slit. But
14 that's all preliminary, so we'll have to see what
15 pans out.

16 DR. TOGIAS: Yeah. For response to
17 treatment, I can see that different biomarkers
18 will be more appropriate. But for diagnosis,
19 prognosis of disease, natural history kind of
20 thing, then maybe we should have, hopefully, some
21 common biomarkers that will allow us to predict a
22 few things. Question for Wayne, since you haven't

1 gotten into the discussion. When it comes to T
2 cells, I've always been concerned, especially
3 since we're doing a lot of pediatric research
4 about blood volumes and what are the prospects of
5 being able to conduct this work with much less
6 blood volume?

7 DR. SHREFFLER: I don't know what the
8 big deal is. Kids have a lot of blood. You know,
9 I mean, Eric has shown elegantly, Cecilia, others,
10 that you can to some extent take advantage of the
11 higher lymphocyte counts in young pediatric
12 patients to your advantage and do meaningful
13 assays with feasible amounts of blood. Certainly,
14 10 MLs is great, but you can go below that for
15 many of these readouts.

16 I think when you get into some of the
17 things that -- you know, I'm really interested in,
18 the TCR repertoire space.

19 DR. TOGIAS: Mm-hmm?

20 DR. SHREFFLER: And there, you generally
21 need depth that's harder to achieve with less than
22 at least 20/30 mils, and the more the better,

1 frankly.

2 DR. TOGIAS: Yeah.

3 DR. SHREFFLER: However, I do think that
4 we see in the case of peanut, in the case of milk,
5 where the data sets are becoming substantial,
6 there are some really dominant public TCRs that,
7 when located in a particular CD4 subset, I think
8 may well have biomarker utility and that are
9 abundant enough that there's always going to be
10 sampling error and that's going to be a major
11 limitation on sensitivity. But I think that an
12 assay like that ought to probably be able to achieve
13 high specificity.

14 DR. TOGIAS: Before you run, there was
15 somebody waiting back. I'm sorry, I don't know
16 your name.

17 DR. SORELLE: Yeah. No, please. I'm
18 Jeff Sorelle. I'm from UT Southwestern. I, in
19 addition to doing basic science research, also am
20 a pathologist, run the clinical lab test that
21 hopefully we could use one of these someday. So,
22 when we evaluate a new test, and as the FDA

1 mentioned this morning, they have to look at
2 several different factors. So, I wondered if we
3 can maybe just do a show of hands. Since you've
4 all shown good biological applicability, who all
5 has now done testing on samples in over three
6 clinical trials with the assay you presented?
7 Andre, I think you've done over.

8 UNIDENTIFIED: Yeah.

9 DR. SORELLE: And then who has done
10 testing on at least 100 patients? And who has
11 done all of this on like over 400 or 300? Someone
12 there. And then who has locked down a cut off and
13 then done a validation cohort study? So, we
14 obviously have a lot of good data here to move
15 forward with trying to figure out what these
16 cutoffs need to be or what are our goalposts, and
17 probably we'll have a conversation with regulation
18 going forward to say which people have met or
19 which tests have met these criteria and can we
20 move forward with. So, that's all that I sort of
21 had to say. Thank you very much for all the
22 really great data.

1 DR. TOGIAS: Somebody wants to respond
2 to that or you're all in agreement?

3 DR. SHREFFLER: Yeah, I think these
4 kinds of alliances with industry, because it's
5 about the funding, right? It's about doing the
6 boring work that's not going to get a competitive
7 ROI, you know what I mean? I mean, it's work that
8 needs to be done, but it's very yeoman's practical
9 kind of stuff. It's what I get bored with
10 personally. Right. But it's really important if
11 we're ever going to translate this to something
12 that's useful.

13 DR. TOGIAS: Ron?

14 DR. RABIN: Yeah, I had a question for
15 Hugh about the bead assay because I think there
16 was some data published about it. But as I
17 remember, you didn't discuss IgG and IgG binding
18 to the peptides, particularly during OIT, and
19 whether or not that was predictive. Can you give
20 us a few short words on that?

21 DR. SAMPSON: Yes. Basically, all the
22 data I showed you is published somewhere, but I

1 guess you're not going to give out the slides, so
2 they're not going to know where. But anyway.

3 DR. RABIN: Well, I can have everybody
4 email you if you want.

5 DR. SAMPSON: No, no. That's okay. I
6 get enough emails. Actually, surprisingly, the
7 reason we're not using it, when we use these
8 machine-learning algorithms and identify what are
9 the most predictive epitopes and IgG and IgG4
10 don't rank up there. And that really surprised
11 me, especially with the immunotherapy trials. We
12 always think that that's one of the important
13 factors, but they don't weigh in. They're down
14 the list. But we have looked at them.

15 DR. VOLLMERS: All right, Thomas
16 Vollmers again, AllerGenis and the Food Allergy
17 Biomarker Alliance. My question is, how do you
18 all think we should leverage the momentum gained
19 from today, the excitement perhaps in the room,
20 about biomarkers and response markers? And where
21 do we take this meeting? Maybe it's Duran
22 (phonetic) as well. And where do

1 we go from here? How do we
2 continue the conversation as
3 academia, the FDA, the NIH,
4 industry?

5 DR. SHREFFLER: Send us money, Thomas.

6 DR. VOLLMERS: Believe me, don't have
7 any.

8 MR. RABIN: Well, are you asking me?

9 DR. VOLLMERS: Yeah, you too. Yeah.
10 Yeah.

11 MR. RABIN: Well, I mean, I think we
12 learned a lot today and I think we have to have a
13 lot of internal discussion. I think eventually,
14 as these things come out, what happens is, I think
15 the way things evolve is that if things have real
16 impact, they would probably go before an advisory
17 committee at some point. And whether, how far we
18 are from that stage, I would not begin to predict,
19 certainly. I think for obvious reasons, we're
20 very careful about revealing what we think in the
21 moment. So, this has been very revealing to us.
22 We've learned a lot about biomarkers. We've

1 certainly established our objectives here. We
2 hope that the morning talks have informed industry
3 and those of you who are interested in this about
4 what you need to do to bring things to us. And
5 how fast things will evolve, I couldn't predict.
6 But that's the process.

7 DR. ORTEGA: Just one comment. I don't
8 try to impose any work to those who are sitting
9 there, but I work years ago at NHLBI, and often we
10 used to generate some proceedings. Have a
11 publication out of that, because you are very
12 familiar to that.

13 MR. RABIN: It's going to happen.

14 DR. ORTEGA: Maybe if it's that on the
15 books, that will be first step, too.

16 DR. TOGIAS: I think Ron has already
17 initiated the process.

18 DR. ORTEGA: Perfect. Yeah.

19 COURT REPORTER: Could you state your
20 name, please.

21 DR. ORTEGA: Hector Ortega, San Diego.

22 COURT REPORTER: Thank you, sir.

1 DR. TOGIAS: All right, unless somebody
2 has something else to say, I have the privilege to
3 close the meeting. Ron, do you have to do some
4 closing arguments? No, he doesn't. Okay. Well,
5 thank you very much and we'll see you soon at the
6 Academy.

7 (Whereupon, at 5:11 p.m., the
8 PROCEEDINGS were adjourned.)

9 * * * * *

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

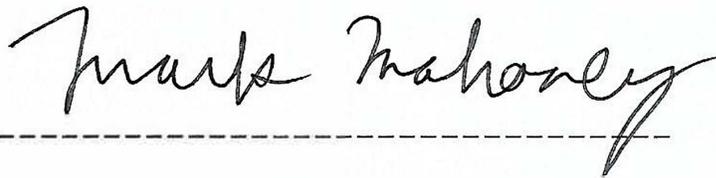
20

21

22

CERTIFICATE OF NOTARY PUBLIC
STATE OF MARYLAND

I, Mark Mahoney, notary public in and for the State of Maryland, do hereby certify that the forgoing PROCEEDING was duly recorded and thereafter reduced to print under my direction; that the witnesses were sworn to tell the truth under penalty of perjury; that said transcript is a true record of the testimony given by witnesses; that I am neither counsel for, related to, nor employed by any of the parties to the action in which this proceeding was called; and, furthermore, that I am not a relative or employee of any attorney or counsel employed by the parties hereto, nor financially or otherwise interested in the outcome of this action.



Notary Public, in and for the State of Maryland

My Commission Expires: June 7, 2023